English: Unlocked Literal Bible for 2 Timothy

Formatted for Translators

©2022 Wycliffe Associates

Released under a Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Bible Text: The English Unlocked Literal Bible (ULB)

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English Unlocked Literal Bible is based on the unfoldingWord® Literal Text, CC BY-SA 4.0. The original work of the unfoldingWord® Literal Text is available at [https://unfoldingword.bible/ult/](https://nam12.safelinks.protection.outlook.com/?url=https%3A%2F%2Funfoldingword.bible%2Fult%2F&data=02%7C01%7Cmarv_lucas%40wycliffeassociates.org%7Cab3b29dbe7fc44554aeb08d8080e8e70%7C7baa11086adb4be299cf00a4872ab1cf%7C0%7C0%7C637268205914531190&sdata=SW2KxVr%2BcxHGAgMpv602NzoYenorfHi9bOs2SNzVpR4%3D&reserved=0).

The ULB is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

Notes: English ULB Translation Notes

©2017 Wycliffe Associates

Available at <https://bibleineverylanguage.org/translations>

The English ULB Translation Notes is based on the unfoldingWord translationNotes, under CC BY-SA 4.0. The original unfoldingWord work is available at <https://unfoldingword.bible/utn>.

The ULB Notes is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License.

To view a copy of the CC BY-SA 4.0 license visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/>

Below is a human-readable summary of (and not a substitute for) the license.

**You are free to:**

* **Share**— copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format.
* **Adapt**— remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following conditions:**

* **Attribution**— You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <https://BibleInEveryLanguage.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
* **ShareAlike**— If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.
* **No additional restrictions**— You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.

No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.



TOC \o "1-2" \h \z \uRight-click to update field (doing so will insert table of contents).

Page left intentionally blank

# Introduction to 2 Timothy

### Outline of the Book of 2 Timothy

1. Paul greets Timothy and encourages him to endure hardship as he serves God (1:1-2:13).
2. Paul gives general instructions to Timothy (2:14–26).
3. Paul warns Timothy about future events and instructs him about how to carry out his service to God (3:1-4:8).
4. Paul makes personal remarks (4:9-24).

### Who wrote the Book of 2 Timothy?

Paul wrote 2 Timothy. He was from the city of Tarsus and had been known as Saul in his early life. Before becoming a Christian, Paul was a Pharisee and persecuted Christians. After he became a Christian, he traveled several times throughout the Roman Empire telling people about Jesus.

This book is the second letter Paul wrote Timothy. Timothy was his disciple and close friend. Paul wrote this letter while in prison in Rome. Paul would die soon after writing this letter.

### What is the Book of 2 Timothy about?

Paul had left Timothy in the city of Ephesus to help the believers there. Paul wrote this letter to instruct Timothy about various matter. The topics he addressed include warnings about false teachers and enduring difficult situations. This letter also shows how Paul was training Timothy to be a leader among the churches.

### Introduction to 2 Timothy

## Overview

Timothy helped during Paul’s second missionary journey. Timothy later worked in Ephesus. In Ephesus, Timothy spoke against false teachers and helped the church to honor God (see: 1 Timothy 1:3). Paul wrote his first letter to Timothy while Timothy was in Ephesus. Paul was a prisoner, probably in Rome, when he wrote this second letter to Timothy. He told Timothy that Timothy needed to serve Jesus in the same way Paul did. That is, he needed to preach the gospel in the right way. Timothy needed to teach the true gospel, reject false teachings, and always be brave and to work hard. Also, he told Timothy that Timothy might have to face persecution for being a Christian in the same way Paul did. Paul said that all of Paul’s friends either abandoned him or had left to spread the gospel in other places. He was about to die as a criminal. Paul asked Timothy to leave what he was doing and to join him.

See: Paul's Missionary Journeys; Church; Church; Gospel; Persecute (Persecution)

See Map: Ephesus; Rome

#### Who wrote 2 Timothy?

The apostle Paul wrote this letter (see: 1:1, 1:11, 4:17).

See: Apostle

#### When did Paul write Second Timothy?

Scholars think Paul wrote Second Timothy when he was about to die. Therefore, Paul wrote this letter at the end of his life.

#### To whom did Paul write 2 Timothy?

Paul wrote this letter to Timothy. Timothy was a good friend of Paul’s. He was also preached the gospel with Paul. However, Paul wrote that he wanted all the Christians in Ephesus to hear it read his letter. Scholars think Paul wanted the church to know that when Timothy spoke it was as if Paul spoke to them.

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel

See Map: Ephesus

#### Why did Paul write Second Timothy?

Paul wrote about false teachers who were harming the church in Ephesus. Paul wrote to instruct Timothy to train new teachers. These teachers then needed to teach the same things Paul taught and to train other teachers. Paul really wanted Timothy to serve and obey Jesus in the same way Paul did. He needed to teach the true gospel, to be brave, to work hard, and to be willing to suffer for the gospel. In this letter, Paul also wanted Timothy to join him in Rome before he Paul died.

See: Church; Gospel

See Map: Ephesus; Rome

#### What was the false teaching about which Paul wrote?

Paul wrote about “false teachers” who fought about words. He also wrote what types of things are evil. Paul also wrote about Hymenaeus and Philetus who taught “that the resurrection had already happened” (see comments on 2 Timothy 2:18).

See: False Teacher; Resurrect (Resurrection)

## Outline of 2 Timothy

1. Paul greeted Timothy (1:1-2)
2. Timothy must serve the gospel in the same way Paul did (1:3-2:13)
3. Timothy must fight against false teaching (2:14-3:9)
4. The Scriptures are the foundation for true teaching (3:10-4:5)
5. Paul wrote about his situation in prison (4:6-18)
6. Final Greetings (4:19-22)

## 2 Timothy

1

1Paul, an apostle of Christ Jesus through the will of God, according to the promise of the life that is in Christ Jesus,

2to Timothy, beloved child: Grace, mercy, and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Lord.

3I thank God, whom I serve from my forefathers, with a clean conscience, as I constantly remember you in my prayers night and day.4As I remember your tears, I long to see you, that I may be filled with joy.5I have been reminded of your genuine faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also.6This is the reason I am reminding you to rekindle the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands.7For God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline.8So do not be ashamed of the testimony about our Lord, nor of me, Paul, his prisoner. Instead, share in suffering for the gospel according to the power of God,9who saved us and called us with a holy calling. He did this, not according to our works, but according to his own plan and grace, which he gave us in Christ Jesus before times ever began.10But now God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus, who put an end to death and brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.11Because of this, I was appointed a herald, an apostle, and a teacher. [1](#footnote-target-1)12For this cause I also suffer these things. But I am not ashamed, for I know him whom I have believed. I am convinced that he is able to keep that which I have entrusted to him until that day.13Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me, with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus.14The good thing that God committed to you, guard it through the Holy Spirit, who lives in us.

15You know this, that all who live in Asia turned away from me. In this group are Phygelus and Hermogenes.16May the Lord grant mercy to the household of Onesiphorus, for he often refreshed me and was not ashamed of my chain.17Instead, when he was in Rome, he sought me diligently, and he found me.18May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him on that day. All the ways he served me in Ephesus you know very well.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies add to the Gentiles .

### 2 Timothy 1 Commentary

## 1:1-2

#### How was Paul an apostle by “the will of God”?

[1:1]

Paul was an apostle “through the will of God.” He wanted people to know that God chose to make Paul an apostle (see: Galatians 1:15-16). Paul did not choose this for himself.

See: 1 Corinthians 1:1; Ephesians 1:1

See: Apostle; Will of God

**Advice to Translators**: Another way of saying this is, “God decided to make me an apostle”.

#### What was the “promise of the life”?

[1:1]

God promised to give Christians life. Some scholars think Paul wrote about the things Christians do while they are living (see: 1 Timothy 4:8). Others scholars think Paul wrote about the life Christians will have after they die and go to heaven (see: 1 Timothy 1:16, 6:19).

See: Born Again (New Life, Regeneration); Eternal Life; Heaven

## 1:3-5

#### How did Paul serve God from his “forefathers”?

[1:3]

In the same way Paul’s “forefathers” or ancestors served God, Paul also served the God of Israel. Scholars think Paul spoke about his ancestors from many generations in the past serving the God of Israel. They served God by obeying the Law of Moses (see: Luke 2:37; Acts 27:23).

See: Acts 24:14

See: Ancestor and Descendant (Fathers, Forefathers, Patriarchs); Law of Moses

**Advice to Translators**: Forefathers refers to many generations of ancestors.

#### What “tears” did Paul remember?

[1:4]

Paul remembered seeing Timothy weep in sadness when they separated from one another. Some scholars think this was just before Paul went to prison.

See: Acts 20:36-38

#### Why did Paul say, “I long to see you”?

[1:4]

Paul “longed” to see Timothy again. That is, he really wanted to see Timothy again.

See: 2 Corinthians 9:14; Philippians 1:8, 2:26; 1 Thessalonians 3:6

#### What did it mean that faith “lived first” in Lois and Eunice”?

[1:5]

“Live in”(ἐνοικέω/g1774) was a word Paul often used to speak of God living in a Christian (see: Romans 8:11; 2 Timothy 1:14). Timothy’s mother and grandmother had faith in God before Timothy did; his father was not a Christian (see: Acts 16:1, 3). Some scholars think Paul wanted to write that Lois and Eunice were Jewish and Christians. Other scholars think Paul wanted to write they were Jewish but not Christians.

See: Faith (Believe in)); Indwelling of the Holy Spirit

## 1:6-14

#### What did it mean for Timothy to “rekindle the gift of God”?

[1:6]

Timothy rekindled the gift of God. The word “rekindle”( was used to talk about a fire burning brightly again. Here Paul used a metaphor to write to Timothy to remember the spiritual gift God gave him and to use his gift completely.

See: Romans 12:6-8; 1 Timothy 4:14; 1 Peter 4:10-11

See: Gifts of the Holy Spirit; Metaphor

#### What was the “laying on of hands”?

[1:6]

The “laying on of hands” meant that Paul put his hands on Timothy’s head or shoulders and prayed for him. Some scholars think that this happened when Timothy became a Christian. Others scholars think it was when Paul appointed Timothy to preach the gospel.

See: Acts 13:3; 1 Timothy 4:14

See: Laying on of Hands ; Preach (Preacher); Gospel

#### What was a “spirit of fear”?

[1:7]

Paul wrote about a “spirit of fear.” Some scholars think God gave Timothy the special ability to be a leader in the church. However, Timothy was afraid to do the work of a leader. Other scholars think Paul made a distinction between the spirit of man and the Holy Spirit. The spirit of man can fear things, but the Spirit of God helps Christians live like God wants them to without fear.

See: 28:31; Romans 8:15; 1 Corinthians 16:10;

See: Spirit (Spiritual); Holy Spirit

#### Why did Paul tell Timothy not to be “ashamed”?

[1:8]

Even though Paul was put into prison for preaching the gospel, he didn’t want Timothy to be ashamed of the things Paul preached. That is, Paul did not want Timothy to stop learning about Jesus. Paul also did not want Timothy to stop telling other people about Jesus. As well, Paul did not want Timothy to be ashamed of knowing Paul (see: 1:12; 2:15).

See: Psalm 25:2-3; Mark 8:38; Romans 1:16,

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel

**Advice to Translators**: For the word “ashamed” choose a word that is similar to fear of being rejected by other people, not a feeling of embarrassment

#### What was a “holy calling”?

[1:9]

Some scholars think the words “holy calling”were used to write about a calling from God by which a person became a Christian. Other scholars think Paul was writing that because God saved Christians, they must live a life that is holy.

See: Romans 8:30; Ephesians 1:18; 1 Timothy 6:12

See: Call (Calling); Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)

#### What did Paul mean with the words, “not according to our works”?

[1:9]

God did not call people to be Christians, because they did good “works” or good things. Instead, he called them because of his own plan and will.

See: Romans 8:29-30; 9:11-12; Ephesians 1:4, 2:8-9; Titus 3:5

See: Call (Calling); Will of God

#### What did “before times ever began” mean?

[1:9]

When Paul spoke about “before times ever began,” he was speaking about the time before God created the world (see: Genesis 1:1).

See: John 1:1-2, 17:24; Titus 1:2;

#### Why did Paul write about the “appearing of our Savior”?

[1:10]

When Paul wrote about the “appearing” of our Savior, he wrote about the birth of Jesus. Jesus appeared on the earth exactly how God planned it and at the exact time that God planned. Jesus appeared to save people.

See: Isaiah 7:14

See: Incarnation; Savior; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

#### How did Jesus “put an end to death”?

[1:10]

When Jesus was made alive again he “put an end” to death. That is, he stopped the power of death. This is a metaphor. Christians still die, but they live in heaven after they die. Christians will also be made alive again with a new body when Jesus returns a second time.

See: Isaiah 25:8; 1 Corinthians 15:25-26;

See: Metaphor; Resurrect (Resurrection); Heaven; Jesus' Return to Earth

#### What was “life that never ends”?

[1:10]

God will resurrect all those who believe in Jesus so that they will have a life that “never ends.” They will live together with God in heaven forever.

See: Daniel 12:2-3; John 5:28-29; 1 Corinthians 15:42

See: Resurrect (Resurrection); Heaven; Eternal Life

#### How was God able to “keep” that which Paul entrusted to God?

[1:12]

Paul wrote that God was able to “keep”(φυλάσσω/g5442) that which Paul had entrusted to God. That is, God would guard the gospel from being harmed. Paul was appointed to preach the gospel, and he trusted God to give him the wisdom to preach about the gospel. Paul himself was careful to “keep” God’s word in the scriptures, and he taught Timothy to do the same (see: 1 Timothy 6:20).

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel; Wise (Wisdom, Fool); Word of God

#### What was “that day” written by Paul in 1:12 and 1:18?

[1:12, 1:18]

Some scholars think Paul spoke about the Day of the Lord. This is a specific time when Jesus will return to judge all people (see: Joel 2:31; 1 Thessalonians 5:2). Other scholars think Paul simply spoke about the second coming of Jesus.

See: 4:8; Romans 2:16; 2 Thessalonians 2:3

See: Day of the Lord; Day of the Lord

## 1:15-18

#### Who were “all who live in Asia”?

[1:15]

Paul wrote about “all who live in Asia.” When Paul wrote that “all” people abandoned him, he meant to say that all kinds of people abandoned him. This did not mean that everyone had abandoned him. For example, Onesiphorus remained faithful to Paul.

See Map: Asia

#### What did Paul mean when he said people “turned away” from him?

[1:15]

People “turned away”(ἀποστρέφω/g3654) from following Paul. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think Paul spoke about people no longer wanting him to be a leader. Other scholars think Paul wrote about those who stopped listening to the gospel (see: 4:4).

See: Metaphor; Gospel

#### How was Paul “refreshed” by Onesiphorus?

[1:16]

People in prison needed food and clothing and other help. In ancient times, prisoners were not given food or clothing. Some scholars think Paul wrote about Onesiphorus providing his food and clothing needs while he was in prison.

#### What were Paul’s “chains”?

[1:16]

During his imprisonment, Paul was chained to his guards. “Chain” was used as a metaphor to say that someone was in prison.

See: Acts 28:20; Ephesians 6:20

See: Metaphor

#### 2 Timothy 1:1

##### through the will of God

"because of God's will"

##### according to

"for the purpose of" or "in keeping with"

##### of the life that is in Christ Jesus

"of the life that we receive as a result of belonging to Christ Jesus"

#### 2 Timothy 1:2

##### beloved child

"who is like my beloved child"

##### Grace, mercy, and peace from

"May grace, mercy, and peace be yours from"

##### God the Father and

"God, who is our Father, and.". This refers to God the Father. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word that your language uses to refer to a human father.

##### Christ Jesus our Lord

"Christ Jesus, who is our Lord"

#### 2 Timothy 1:3

##### whom I serve from my forefathers

"whom I serve as my ancestors did"

##### with a clean conscience

"knowing I have tried my hardest to do what is right"

##### as I constantly remember you

"when I remember you continually"

##### night and day

"always" or "constantly"

#### 2 Timothy 1:4

##### I long to see you

"I want very much to see you"

##### I may be filled with joy

"I may be full of joy"

##### I remember your tears

"I remember how you cried for me"

#### 2 Timothy 1:5

##### I have been reminded of your

"I also recall your"

##### your genuine faith

"your faith that is real"

##### faith, which lived first in your grandmother Lois and your mother Eunice, and I am convinced that it lives in you also

"faith. Lois, your grandmother, and Eunice, your mother, first had genuine faith, and I am confident that you have genuine faith as well"

#### 2 Timothy 1:6

##### This is the reason I am

"Because of your sincere faith in Jesus, I am"

##### to rekindle the gift

"to start using again the gift"

##### the gift of God which is in you through the laying on of my hands

"the gift of God that you received when I laid my hands on you."

#### 2 Timothy 1:7

##### God did not give us a spirit of fear, but of power and love and discipline

"God's Holy Spirit does not cause us to be afraid. He causes us to have power and love and discipline" or "God does not cause us to be afraid but to have power and love and discipline"

##### discipline

The power to control ourselves or the power to correct other people who are doing wrong.

#### 2 Timothy 1:8

##### of the testimony

"of telling others"

##### his prisoner

"a prisoner because I testify about the Lord"

##### share in suffering for the gospel

"suffer with me for the gospel"

##### gospel according to the power of God

"gospel, allowing God to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 1:9

##### with a holy calling

"with a calling that set us apart as his people"

##### He did this

"He saved and called us"

##### not according to our works

"not because we did anything to deserve it"

##### but according to his own plan and grace

"but because he planned to show us kindness"

##### in Christ Jesus

"through our relationship to Christ Jesus"

##### before times ever began

"before time began"

#### 2 Timothy 1:10

##### God's salvation has been revealed by the appearing of our Savior Christ Jesus

"God has shown how he will save us by sending our Savior Christ Jesus"

##### who put an end to death

"who made it possible for people not to remain dead forever"

##### brought life and immortality to light through the gospel

"taught what life that never ends is by preaching the gospel"

#### 2 Timothy 1:11

##### I was appointed a herald

"God chose me to be a herald"

##### a herald

a person who proclaims important or official messages

#### 2 Timothy 1:12

##### For this cause

"Because I am an apostle"

##### I also suffer these things

Paul is referring to being a prisoner.

##### to keep that which I have entrusted to him

Paul is trusting Jesus to help him remain faithful, or Paul is trusting that Jesus will ensure that people continue spreading the gospel message.

##### I am convinced

"I am certain"

##### that day

This refers to the day when God judges all people.

#### 2 Timothy 1:13

##### Keep the example of the truthful words that you heard from me

"Keep teaching the correct ideas I have taught you"

##### truthful words

"trustworthy words"

##### with the faith and love that are in Christ Jesus

"as you trust in Jesus Christ and love him"

#### 2 Timothy 1:14

##### The good thing

This refers to the work of proclaiming the gospel correctly.

##### guard it

Timothy needs to be alert because people will oppose his work, try to make him stop, and distort what he says.

##### through the Holy Spirit

"with the power of the Holy Spirit"

#### 2 Timothy 1:15

##### turned away from me

"have stopped helping me"

##### Phygelus and Hermogenes

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 1:16

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

##### to the household

"to the family"

##### was not ashamed of my chain

"was not ashamed that I was in prison"

#### 2 Timothy 1:18

##### May the Lord grant to him to find mercy from him

"May Onesiphorus receive mercy from the Lord"

2

1You therefore, my child, be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus.2The things you heard from me among many witnesses, entrust them to faithful people who will be able to teach others also.3Suffer hardship with me as a good soldier of Christ Jesus.4No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life, so that he may please his superior officer.5Also, if someone competes as an athlete, he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules.6It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first.7Think about what I am saying, for the Lord will give you understanding in everything.8Remember Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was raised from the dead. This is according to my gospel message,9for which I am suffering to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal. But the word of God is not bound.10Therefore I endure all things for those who are chosen, so that they also may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus, with eternal glory.11This is a trustworthy saying:"If we have died with him, we will also live with him.12If we endure, we will also reign with him.If we deny him, he also will deny us.13If we are unfaithful, he remains faithful,for he cannot deny himself."

14Keep reminding them of these things. Command them before God not to quarrel about words; it is of no value and only ruins those who listen. [1](#footnote-target-1)15Do your best to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed, who accurately teaches the word of truth.16Avoid profane and empty talk, which leads to more and more godlessness.17Their talk will spread like cancer. Among them are Hymenaeus and Philetus,18who have gone astray from the truth. They say that the resurrection has already happened, and they destroy the faith of some.19However, the firm foundation of God stands. It has this inscription: "The Lord knows those who are his" and "Everyone who names the name of the Lord must depart from unrighteousness."20In a wealthy home there are not only containers of gold and silver. There are also containers of wood and clay. Some of these are for honorable use, and some for dishonorable.21If someone cleans himself from dishonorable use, he is an honorable container. He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work.22Flee youthful lusts. Pursue righteousness, faith, love, and peace with those who call on the Lord out of a clean heart.23But refuse foolish and ignorant questions. You know that they give birth to quarrels.24The Lord's servant must not quarrel. Instead he must be gentle toward all, able to teach, and patient,25correcting his opponents with gentleness. Perhaps God may give them repentance for the knowledge of the truth.26They may become sober again and leave the devil's trap, after they have been captured by him for his will.

[1](#footnote-caller-1)Some important and ancient Greek copies read, Warn them before the Lord .

### 2 Timothy 2

## 2:1-13

#### How was Timothy to “be strengthened”?

[2:1]

Paul did not write about physical strength. Paul was encouraging Timothy to trust God. This would make him strong in some way. Paul wanted Timothy to let God strengthen him that he might be courageous and even endure suffering.

See: 2 Corinthians 12:9; Ephesians 6:10; 2 Timothy 1:7

#### Who were the “many witnesses”?

[2:2]

Α “witness” was a person who saw or heard something. They could then tell other people about what they saw or heard. These were people who heard Paul teaching at the same time that Timothy heard Paul. They confirmed what Paul said.

See: 1 Thessalonians 2:10; 1 Timothy 6:12

See: Witness (Martyr)

#### What did it mean to “entrust”?

[2:2]

In the ancient world, people “entrusted” their valuable things with a friend so that they could care for them. Paul and others entrusted the things they taught to Timothy (see: 1:13-14; 3:10). He was to teach the same things. He was to teach other people the teachings of Paul so that those people could teach others also.

#### What did it mean to be “entangled in the affairs of this life”?

[2:4]

Paul used the metaphor of a soldier. He did this to speak about how Timothy must do all things to honor God. Roman soldiers were not allowed to be “entangled” in the things of this life. That is, they were only supposed to do the things that their leaders told them tell them to do. In the same way, Timothy was not to do any other work except serve God as a leader of the church.

See: Metaphor

#### How was an athlete “crowned” in Paul’s day?

[2:5]

Paul spoke about a certain crown. This was not the same type of crown that a king wore. When an athlete won something, they were given a crown. That is, a circle made of flowers was put on the head of the person who won something. A crown was the same as a prize or a reward.

See: 1 Corinthians 9:24-25; 2 Timothy 4:7-8; Revelation 2:10

See: Crown

#### Why did Paul use the words, “competes by the rules”?

[2:5]

Paul used the metaphor of an athlete who competed “by the rules.” This made Timothy know that the person who served God did the things God wanted him to do. That is, he obeyed God’s commands.

See: 1 Corinthians 9:24-27

See: Metaphor

#### What was David’s “seed”?

[2:8]

Paul wrote about David’s “seed.” That is, Jesus was a descendent of David. This was especially significant because the Jews knew that the Messiah was going to be someone who was a descendent of David.

See: Matthew 1:1; 22:42; Romans 1:3-4; Revelation 5:5; 22:16

See: Messiah (Christ); Son of David

#### What did it mean to be “bound with chains as a criminal”?

[2:9]

People in prison had their hands and feet put in a large chain. Paul was chained in prison because he preached the gospel. However, the gospel was not “bound.” That is, the message of the gospel could not be stopped. People would continue to tell other people about the gospel.

See: Acts 28:20; Ephesians 6:18-20

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel

#### Who were the “chosen”?

[2:10]

Paul wrote about the people God “chose”(ἐκλεκτός/g1588). These are the people God chose to be his own people.

See: 1 Peter 2:9

See: Elect (Election); People of God

#### How did Christians die with Christ?

[2:11]

Paul wrote about Christians dying with Christ. This was a metaphor. Some scholars think Paul wrote that a person who “died”with Jesus stopped doing the bad things they did before they became a Christian. Instead, followed Jesus. Other scholars think Paul wrote about people who actually “died.” In the Bible, dying is being separated from something. When non-Christians die, they die a second time (see: Romans 6:3-5). This is when they are separated from God forever. If those people believed in Jesus, they will live again when Jesus returns at his second coming.

See: Metaphor; Metaphor; Baptize (Baptism); Jesus' Return to Earth

#### Why did Paul tell Timothy to “endure”?

[2:11]

The word “endure”(ὑπομένω/g5278) is used to talk about continuing to do something even when it is hard to do it. Christians must continue to do things that honor God throughout their whole lives even if they suffered because of it.

See: Mark 13:13; 2 Thessalonians 1:4; 2 Timothy 4:5;

#### Why did Paul write that people will “reign” with Christ?

[2:12]

Paul wrote about an event that will happen in the future. Jesus will reign over all creation and Christians will reign with him. People “reign”(συμβασιλεύω/g4821) with Jesus by ruling with him in the kingdom of God.

See: Matthew 19:28; 1 Corinthians 6:2-3; Revelation 20:4-6

See: Kingdom of God

#### How did someone “deny” Jesus?

[2:12]

When someone denied Jesus, they said that they did not know Jesus and were not his followers. They rejected Jesus. If people deny Jesus, then Jesus will deny them on judgment day or the day of final judgment (see: 2 Timothy 4:1).

See: Matthew 10:33; Mark 8:38

See: Day of Judgment

#### How was someone “unfaithful”?

[2:13]

Scholars think different things about 2:13.

1. Some scholars think Paul wanted people to know that some Christians stop obeying the teachings of Jesus in some way. That is they continue to sin.
2. Some scholars think Paul wanted people to know that if a person does not does not have any faith, they will not be saved.
3. Other scholars think Paul wrote about people who stopped believing in the things Jesus taught.

See: Romans 3:3; 1 Corinthians 1:9; 2 Thessalonians 3:3

See: Faithful; Sin; Save (Salvation, Saved from Sins)

## 2:14-18

#### Why did Paul write not to “quarrel about words”?

[2:14]

Some scholars think Paul reminded Timothy to tell Christians not to be friends with people who only want to argue about words and their meanings (see: 1 Timothy 6:4). Other scholars think Paul wrote about certain false teachers who argued about old stories and who their ancestors were (see: 1 Timothy 1:4-7; 4:7). Still other scholars think Paul wrote Timothy to tell Christians to not have discussions that were not taught by Jesus or in the Bible.

See: Proverbs 20:3; 1 Timothy 6:20

#### Why did Paul tell Timothy to “present yourself to God”?

[2:15]

Some scholars think Paul wanted Timothy to “present” himself to God every day. That is, Timothy needed to serve God every day. Other scholars think Paul wrote about Timothy standing in front of God at the time of judgment; Therefore, Timothy must continue to serve God.

See: 1 Thessalonians 2:4; 1 Timothy 5:21; 6:13-16

See: Day of Judgment

#### Why was Timothy not “to be ashamed”?

[1:15]

Paul wanted Timothy to know there was no shame in teaching the gospel because God chose Timothy to do this.

See: Psalm 25:2-3; Romans 1:16

See: Shame (Ashamed); Gospel

#### How was Timothy to teach the truth “accurately”?

[2:15]

Paul told Timothy to teach the word of truth “accurately”(ὀρθοτομέω/g3718). That is, Timothy needed to teach the gospel correctly.

See: Ephesians 4:11-15; 1 Timothy 6:3

See: Gospel

#### How did talk “spread like cancer”?

[2:17]

Cancer is a disease that is dangerous and moves quickly throughout the body. Paul used the word “cancer” as a metaphor to write that false teaching was dangerous, and it could spread quickly if it was not corrected.

See: 2 Timothy 4:3

See: Metaphor

#### Why did people say “the resurrection has already happened”?

[2:18]

Paul wrote about people who said that “the resurrection has already happened.” This was an example of false teaching. Those people taught that the resurrection happened when people believed in Jesus. They believed it was a type of metaphor. In the church at Corinth, there were people who taught there is no resurrection (see: 1 Corinthians 15:12).

See: Acts 23:8;

See: Resurrect (Resurrection)

See Map: Corinth

## 2:19-26

#### What was the “firm foundation of God”?

[2:19]

A foundation is something on which a building is built. It is the first layer of the building. That is, the first part built on the very bottom. Some scholars think Paul used the word foundation as a metaphor to write about the church (see: 1 Timothy 3:15). Other scholars think Paul wrote about God, Jesus, or maybe the gospel (see: 1 Corinthians 3:11; Ephesians 2:19-20). Foundations sometimes had an “inscription.” That is, something written on the stones so other people would know who owned the building. In the same way, God has marked his church. This allows other people to know who truly belongs to God (see: Numbers 16:5).

See: Isaiah 28:16

See: Metaphor; Gospel; Church

#### What were the “containers” about which Paul spoke?

[2:20]

A container is something used to store things. They were also used for cooking or serving food (see: Romans 9:21). Paul used the word “containers” as a metaphor to write about people who served God.

See: Metaphor

#### Why did Paul write about “honorable” and “dishonorable” uses?

[2:20]

Some scholars think Paul used the words “honorable” and “dishonorable” to write about two types of people in the church. Honorable containers in a home were generally made of gold or silver and were only used for special things. In the same way, God thought of those who believe in Jesus as honorable. That is, they were for a special purpose. However, there were also people who did not believe in Jesus. These, God thought of as dishonorable. Paul wrote that people needed to become honorable people. That is, they needed to believe in Jesus and do the things that honored God.

See: 1 Peter 1:22; 1 John 3:3

See: Church; Purify (Pure)

#### What were “youthful lusts”?

[2:22]

Paul wrote about “youthful lusts.” Some scholars think Paul wrote about the kinds of things younger people want to do. Other scholars think Paul wrote about people who were young in their faith. That is, they had not been Chrsitians for a long time and they still really wanted to do things that did not honor God. Paul was not writing only about sexual things when he wrote the word “lusts.” Paul also wrote about people wanting money and power. Timothy also needed to not want or do these things.

See: 1 Peter 2:11

#### What did it mean to “pursue righteousness”?

[2:22]

To “pursue” righteousness was to go toward it. This is, everything Timothy did needed to honor God. Timothy needed to want to do things that honor God.

See: 1 Peter 3:11

See: Righteous (Righteousness)

#### What did it mean to “give birth” to arguments?

[2:23]

Paul wrote Timothy that foolish questions “give birth” to arguments. This was a metaphor. That is, foolish questions make arguments happen.

#### Why did Paul write to “become sober”?

[2:26]

Paul wrote to become sober. That is, he wanted people to think clearly and correctly about spiritual things.

See: 2 Timothy 4:5; 1 Peter 4:7

See: Spirit (Spiritual)

#### What was the “devil’s trap”?

[2:26]

Paul wrote about the “devil’s trap.” Some scholars think “the devil’s trap” was the same as the devil’s lies (see: Genesis 3:4-6; John 8:44).

See: 1 Timothy 6:9-10; Revelation 12:9

See: Satan (The Devil)

#### 2 Timothy 2:1

##### my child

"who is like my child"

##### be strengthened in the grace that is in Christ Jesus

"let God use the grace he gave you through your relationship to Christ Jesus to make you strong"

#### 2 Timothy 2:2

##### among many witnesses

"with many witnesses there to agree that what I said is true"

##### entrust them to faithful people

"commit them"

#### 2 Timothy 2:3

##### Suffer hardship with me

"Endure suffering as I do"

##### as a good soldier of Christ Jesus

Paul compares suffering for Christ Jesus to the suffering that a good soldier endures.

#### 2 Timothy 2:4

##### No soldier serves while entangled in the affairs of this life

"When soldiers are serving, they do not get distracted by the ordinary things that people do."

##### his superior officer

"his leader" or "the one who commands him"

#### 2 Timothy 2:5

##### he is not crowned unless he competes by the rules

"they will crown him as winner only if he competes by the rules"

##### he is not crowned

"he does not win the prize." Athletes in Paul's time were crowned with wreaths made from the leaves of plants when they won competitions.

##### competes by the rules

"competes according to the rules"

#### 2 Timothy 2:6

##### It is necessary that the hard-working farmer receive his share of the crops first

The reader should understand that Christ's servants need to work hard.

#### 2 Timothy 2:7

##### in everything

"about everything"

#### 2 Timothy 2:8

##### who was raised from the dead

"whom God caused to live again"

##### according to my gospel message

"according to the gospel message that I preach"

#### 2 Timothy 2:9

##### to the point of being bound with chains as a criminal

"to the point of wearing chains as a criminal in prison"

##### the word of God is not bound

"no one can stop the word of God"

#### 2 Timothy 2:10

##### for those who are chosen

"for the people whom God has chosen"

##### may obtain the salvation that is in Christ Jesus

"will receive salvation from Christ Jesus"

##### with eternal glory

"and that they will be forever with him in the glorious place where he is"

#### 2 Timothy 2:11

##### This is a trustworthy saying

"These are words you can trust"

##### If we have died with him, we will also live with him

This is most likely the beginning of a song or poem that Paul is quoting. If your language has a way of indicating that this is poetry, you could use it here. If not, you could translate this as regular prose rather than poetry.

##### died with him

Paul uses this expression to mean that people share in Christ's death when they trust in Jesus, deny their own wants, and obey him.

#### 2 Timothy 2:13

##### if we are unfaithful ... he cannot deny himself

This is most likely the end of a song or poem that Paul is quoting.

##### if we are unfaithful

"even if we fail God" or "even if we do not do what we believe God wants us to do"

##### he cannot deny himself

"he must always act according to his character"

#### 2 Timothy 2:14

##### before God

"in God's presence" or "with God as your witness"

##### not to quarrel about words

"not to argue about foolish things that people say"

##### it is of no value

"this does not benefit anyone"

#### 2 Timothy 2:15

##### to present yourself to God as one approved, a laborer who has no reason to be ashamed

"to present yourself to God as a person who has proven to be worthy and has no cause for shame"

##### a laborer

"like a workman"

##### accurately teaches the word of truth

"explains the true message correctly."

#### 2 Timothy 2:16

##### Avoid profane and empty talk

"Do not pay attention to ungodly and useless talk"

##### which leads to more and more godlessness

"which causes people to become more and more ungodly"

#### 2 Timothy 2:17

##### Their talk will spread like cancer

"What they say will spread like an infectious disease" or "Their talk will spread quickly and cause destruction like cancer"

##### Hymenaeus and Philetus

These are names of men.

#### 2 Timothy 2:18

##### who have gone astray from the truth

"who have started saying things that are not true"

##### the resurrection has already happened

"God has already raised dead believers to eternal life"

##### they destroy the faith of some

"they cause some people to stop believing"

#### 2 Timothy 2:19

##### the firm foundation of God stands

"God's truth is like a firm foundation" or "God has established his people like a building on a firm foundation" or "God's faithfulness is like a firm foundation."

##### this inscription

Possible meanings of "inscription" are 1) words written into stone with a chisel or 2) words impressed in wax by a king's ring.

##### who names the name of the Lord

"who calls on the Lord" or "who says he is a believer in Christ"

##### depart from unrighteousness

"stop being evil"

#### 2 Timothy 2:20

##### containers of gold and silver ... containers of wood and clay

Here "containers" is a general word for bowls, plates, and pots. If your language does not have a general word, use the word for "bowls" or "pots."

##### honorable use ... dishonorable

"special occasions ... ordinary times" or "the kinds of activities people do in public ... the kinds of activities people do in private"

#### 2 Timothy 2:21

##### cleans himself from dishonorable use

"separates himself from dishonorable people" or "makes himself pure"

##### He is set apart, useful to the Master, and prepared for every good work

"The Master sets him apart, and he is ready for the Master to use him for every good work"

#### 2 Timothy 2:22

##### Flee youthful lusts

"Completely avoid youthful lusts"

##### Pursue righteousness

"Seek after righteousness"

##### with those

Possible meanings are 1) Paul wants Timothy to join with other believers in pursuing righteousness, faith, love, and peace, or 2) Paul wants Timothy to be at peace and not argue with other believers.

##### those who call on the Lord

"those who worship the Lord"

##### out of a clean heart

"with a sincere mind" or "with sincerity"

#### 2 Timothy 2:23

##### refuse foolish and ignorant questions

"refuse to answer foolish and ignorant questions." or "refuse to answer the questions that foolish people who do not want to know the truth ask"

##### they give birth to quarrels

"they cause arguments"

#### 2 Timothy 2:25

##### correcting his opponents with gentleness

"gently correcting those who oppose him"

##### his opponents

"people who say that what he teaches is not true"

##### Perhaps God may give them repentance

"God may give them the opportunity to repent"

##### for the knowledge of the truth

"so that they will know the truth"

#### 2 Timothy 2:26

##### They may become sober again

"They may think correctly again"

##### leave the devil's trap

"stop doing what the devil wants"

##### after they have been captured by him for his will

"after he has deceived them into obeying his will"

3

1But know this: In the last days there will be difficult times.2For people will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, boastful, proud, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, and unholy.3They will be without natural affection, unable to reconcile, slanderers, without self-control, violent, not lovers of good.4They will be betrayers, reckless, prideful, lovers of pleasure rather than lovers of God.5They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power. Turn away from these people.6For some of them are men who enter into households and captivate foolish women. These are women who are loaded up with sins and are led away by various desires.7These women are always learning, but they are never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.8In the same way that Jannes and Jambres stood against Moses, these false teachers also stand against the truth. They are men corrupt in mind, and with regard to the faith they are rejected.9But they will not advance very far. For their foolishness will be obvious to all, just like that of those men.10But as for you, you have followed my teaching, conduct, purpose, faith, longsuffering, love, patience,11persecutions, sufferings, and what happened to me at Antioch, at Iconium, and at Lystra. I endured persecutions. Out of them all, the Lord rescued me.12All those who want to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus will be persecuted.13Evil people and impostors will go from bad to worse, leading others astray and being led astray.14But as for you, remain in the things that you have learned and have firmly believed. You know from whom you have learned.15You know that from childhood you have known the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus.16All scripture has been inspired by God. It is profitable for doctrine, for conviction, for correction, and for training in righteousness.17This is so that the man of God may be competent, equipped for every good work.

### 2 Timothy 3

## 3:1-9

#### What were the “last days”?

[3:1]

See: Last Days

#### How were people “lovers of themselves”?

[3:2]

Paul wrote about people who did not love God when he wrote about people who were “lovers of themselves.” They did not love other people either. People who only loved themselves only cared about himself and did not care for the needs of other people. They loved money. That is, they really wanted to have money because they could use it to get what they wanted (see: Psalm 10:3; Philippians 2:21).

#### What were “blasphemers”?

[3:2]

A “blasphemer” was someone who spoke blasphemy. They spoke evil things. Some scholars think Paul spoke about people insulting other people (see: Ephesians 4:31). Other scholars think Paul spoke about speaking evil things about God (see: Acts 6:11).

See: 1 Timothy 1: 6:4

See: Blaspheme (Blasphemy)

#### What did it mean to be “without natural affection”?

[3:3]

A person who was “without natural affection” was a person who was unwilling to be peaceful with anyone. Some scholars think they did not even have love to their own families.

**Advice to Translators**: Seek a word for “affection” that has to do with emotions, not with sexual attraction

See: Titus 3:3

#### What did it mean to have a “shape of godliness”?

[3:5]

Paul spoke about people who had a “shape of godliness.” This was a metaphor. Scholars think when Paul wrote about people who did certain things to make other people think they worshipped God. However, they did not believe in Jesus. They only appeared to honor God. They wanted other people to honor them because of the things they did.

See: Isaiah 29:13; Matthew 23:27-28; 2 Corinthians 11:14-15; Titus 1:16

See: Godly (Godliness)

#### What did Paul mean when he wrote Timothy to “turn away” from certain people?

[3:5]

Paul told Timothy to “turn away”(ἀποτρέπω/g0665) from certain people. Paul wanted Timothy to avoid certain types of people. He did not want Timothy to be friends with these people or to argue with them.

See: 2:23; Titus 3:10; 2 John 10-11

#### How did false teachers “enter into households”?

[3:6]

Paul wrote about false teachers entering into people’s households. Some scholars think that false teachers got people to trust them. These people then let the false teachers into their homes. In Paul’s day, it was common for a Chrsitians to gather together in someone’s home.

See: Titus 1:10-11; Jude 3-4

See: False Teacher

#### How did some men “captivate foolish women”?

[3:6]

Paul said that some men “captivate foolish women.” Some scholars think Paul wrote about certain women who did not know many things taught by the apostles and in the Bible. They would listen to false teachers. They would do whatever the false teachers told them to do. Some scholars think these women stopped thinking for themselves. They believed everything the false teachers told them.

**Advice to Translators**: This should be translated so people will know that only some women believed false teachers.

See: Titus 2:3-5

See: Apostle; False Teacher

#### Why were those women “never able to come to the knowledge of the truth”?

[3:7]

Paul said that these women were “never able to come to the knowledge of the truth.” Scholars think that even though those women heard some of the truth, they also heard many lies. They heard so many lies that they were not able to know what was true and what was a lie (see: 2 Timothy 4:3-4).

#### Who were Jannes and Jambres?

[3:8]

The book of Exodus told how certain Egyptians tried to do the miracles that Moses did (see: Exodus 7-9). Eventually, they were not able to do the same miracles as Moses (see: Exodus 8:7; 9:11). The Jews taught that these Egyptians were named Jannes and Jambres. The Bible does not record their names. Paul said that these false teachers were like these Egyptians. They were the enemies of God even though they seemed to worship God.

Paul wrote that the false teachers did not “advance very far” to write that their teachings would eventually fail in the same way that the Egyptian false teachers failed.

**Advice to Translators**: In a dynamic translation, this might be rendered “Jannes and Jambres the Egyptian magicians who stood against Moses.”

See: Exodus 7-9; 2 Thessalonians 2:9

See: Miracle

## 3:10-17

#### Where were the cities of Antioch, Iconium, and Lystra?

[3:11]

See Map: Antioch; Iconium; Lystra

#### What was an “imposter”?

[3:13]

An “imposter” was a person who acted like they were someone else. They did this to deceive others. Jannes and Jambres were also imposters. In this epistle, an imposter was a teacher who only pretended to serve God.

#### What did Paul consider to be “childhood” for Timothy?

[3:15]

Paul used the word “childhood”(βρέφος/g1025) to talk about when Timothy was a young child. The Jews thought that a child needed to learn about the Bible after age five.

See: Psalm 71:17; Proverbs 22:6; 2 Timothy 1:5

#### What were the “sacred writings”?

[3:15]

The books of the Old Testament were called the “sacred writings”.

See: Luke 24:27; Romans 1:2

See: Old Testament (Law and Prophets); Holy (Holiness, Set Apart)

#### What did it mean that “all scripture has been inspired by God”?

[3:16]

When Paul said that all scripture was “inspired” by God, he said that God put his words into the minds of men so that they could write the Bible. Therefore, it was as if God wrote the Bible

See: 2 Peter 1:19-21

See: Inspired

#### How was scripture “profitable”?

[3:16]

Scripture is “profitable.” That is, Scripture gives knowledge to someone who studied and obeyed it. It helped them and gave them something worth having.

See: Psalm 19:7-11; Romans 15:4

**Advice to Translators**: “Profitable” can sometimes mean a source of money. It is better to use a word that means helpful.

#### How were God’s servants “equipped” by the scriptures?

[3:17]

The scriptures “equipped”(ἐξαρτίζω/g1822) Christian by teaching them about what God is like. God’s will and plan for the church were in the scriptures. SStudying the scriptures helped Christian to know how to lead the church and to encourage people who believe in Jesus (see: Ephesians 4:11-13).

See: Will of God; Church

#### 2 Timothy 3:1

##### In the last days

"during this period of time before Jesus returns"

##### difficult times

These will be days, months, or even years when Christians will endure suffering and danger.

#### 2 Timothy 3:2

##### lovers of themselves

"self-centered"

#### 2 Timothy 3:3

##### without natural affection

"unloving even to their own families"

##### unable to reconcile

"unwilling to live peacefully with others"

##### not lovers of good

"haters of good"

#### 2 Timothy 3:5

##### They will have a shape of godliness, but they will deny its power

"They will appear to honor God, but they way they act will show that they do not really believe in God's power"

##### have a shape of godliness

"appear to honor God"

##### Turn away from these people

"Avoid these people"

#### 2 Timothy 3:6

##### enter into households and captivate

"enter into houses and greatly influence"

##### foolish women

"women who are spiritually weak."

##### who are loaded up with sins

"who sin often" or "who feel terrible guilt because they continue to sin.". The idea is that these men can easily influence these women because the women are unable to stop sinning.

##### are led away by various desires

"they desire to sin in various ways rather than obey Christ"

#### 2 Timothy 3:8

##### Jannes and Jambres

These are names of men.

##### stood against

"opposed" (Exodus 7:11)

##### stand against the truth

"oppose the gospel of Jesus"

##### They are men corrupt in mind

"Their minds are corrupt" or "They cannot think rightly"

##### and with regard to the faith they are rejected

"and they have shown that their faith is not sincere" or "and, according to the true teachings of the Christian faith, God has rejected them"

#### 2 Timothy 3:9

##### they will not advance very far

"they will not have much success"

##### obvious to all

"easily seen by all"

#### 2 Timothy 3:10

##### you have followed my teaching

"you have paid close attention to my teaching"

##### my teaching

"what I have taught you to do"

##### longsuffering

"perseverance"

#### 2 Timothy 3:11

##### Out of them all, the Lord rescued me

Paul speaks of God having stopped him from suffering these hardships and dangers as if God had carried him out of a physical location.

#### 2 Timothy 3:12

##### to live in a godly manner in Christ Jesus

"to live godly lives as followers of Jesus"

##### will be persecuted

"will certainly have to endure persecution"

#### 2 Timothy 3:13

##### impostors

An imposter is a person who wants other people to think he is someone other, usually more important, than who he is.

##### will go from bad to worse

"will become even more evil"

##### leading others astray and being led astray

"deceiving and being deceived" or "teaching lies and believing lies"

#### 2 Timothy 3:14

##### remain in the things that you have learned

"do not forget what you learned" or "continue doing what you have learned"

#### 2 Timothy 3:15

##### the sacred writings. These are able to make you wise for salvation through faith in Christ Jesus

"what is in the sacred writings. When you read the word of God, you can become wise so as to receive salvation from Christ Jesus by faith"

#### 2 Timothy 3:16

##### All scripture has been inspired by God

"All scripture is God-breathed" or "God has spoken all scripture by his Spirit"

##### It is profitable

"It is useful" or "It is beneficial"

##### for conviction

"for pointing out errors"

##### for correction

"for fixing errors"

##### for training in righteousness

"for training people to be righteous"

#### 2 Timothy 3:17

##### the man of God

"all believers"

##### may be competent, equipped

"may be completely prepared"

4

1I give this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus, who will judge the living and the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom:2Preach the word; be ready when it is convenient and when it is not. Reprove, rebuke, exhort, with all patience and teaching.3For the time will come when people will not endure sound teaching. Instead, they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires, who say what their itching ears want to hear.4They will turn their hearing away from the truth, and they will turn aside to myths.5But you, be sober-minded in all things. Suffer hardship; do the work of an evangelist; fulfill your ministry.6For I am already being poured out. The time of my departure has come.7I have fought the good fight; I have finished the race; I have kept the faith.8The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me, which the Lord, the righteous judge, will give to me on that day, and not to me only, but also to all those who have loved his appearing.

9Do your best to come to me quickly.10For Demas has left me. He loves this present world and has gone to Thessalonica. Crescens went to Galatia, and Titus went to Dalmatia.11Only Luke is with me. Get Mark and bring him with you because he is useful to me in the service.12Tychicus I sent to Ephesus.13The cloak that I left at Troas with Carpus, bring it when you come, and the books, especially the parchments.14Alexander the coppersmith displayed many evil deeds against me. The Lord will repay him according to his deeds.15You also should guard yourself against him, because he greatly opposed our words.16At my first defense, no one stood with me. Instead, everyone left me. May it not be counted against them.17But the Lord stood by me and strengthened me so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished, and that all the Gentiles might hear it. And I was rescued out of the lion's mouth.18The Lord will rescue me from every evil deed and will save me for his heavenly kingdom. To him be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

19Greet Priscilla, Aquila, and the house of Onesiphorus.20Erastus remained at Corinth, but Trophimus I left sick at Miletus.21Do your best to come before winter. Eubulus greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers.

22May the Lord be with your spirit. May grace be with you.

### 2 Timothy 4

## 4:1-8

#### What was a “solemn command before God and Jesus”?

[4:1]

Paul spoke about a “solemn command before God and Jesus.” Scholars think Paul gave Timothy this “command” to warn Timothy about making a promise in the presence of God and Jesus. If someone made this type of promise, they really needed to do what they promised. He wanted Timothy to know that God and Jesus watched him at every moment.

See: Numbers 30:2; 6:13-14

See: Command (Commandment)

#### Why did Paul write that Jesus will “judge the living and the dead”?

[4:1]

Paul wrote that Jesus will “judge the living and the dead.” Scholars think Paul wrote about Jesus judging people when he returned to the earth. At this time, Jesus will “judge” every person. The living will be judged. That is, those who are alive when Jesus returns to earth. The dead are all those people who died before Jesus returned to earth.

See: Matthew 16:27; Acts 10:422 Corinthians 5:10; 1 Peter 4:3-5

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Day of Judgment

#### Why did Paul write “his appearing and his kingdom”?

[4:1]

In the New Testament, the word “appearing” was the word used to write about the second coming of Christ (see: 1 Timothy 6:14; 2 Timothy 4:1). That is, the time would Jesus would again appear on the earth. Scholars think Paul not only wrote about judgement at Jesus’ second coming, but also his kingdom when he will rule all people in the world.

See: Jesus' Return to Earth; Kingdom of God

#### Why did Paul write “convenient”?

[4:2]

Paul wrote about preaching the gospel when it was convenient and when it was not convenient. Some scholars think Paul was writing Timothy to preach the gospel whether people wanted to listen to it or not. Other scholars think Paul wrote Timothy to preach the gospel whether he wanted to do it or not. Still other scholars think Paul wrote Timothy to preach the gospel message even if people rejected it.

See: 1 Timothy 4:11-16

See: Preach (Preacher); Gospel

#### What was “sound teaching”?

[4:3]

“Sound” teaching was all the things the apostles taught and accepted (see: Titus 1:9, 2:1).

See: 1 Timothy 6:3; 2 Timothy 1:13

See: Apostle

#### How did people “heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires”?

[4:3]

Paul said that people “heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires.” The words “heap up” were used to talk about being around many different kinds of teachers (see: Acts 17:18-21). Paul wanted Timothy to know that people will continue to search for teachers who teach the things they want to hear and do.

#### Why did Paul write “itching ears”?

[4:3]

Paul used the words “itching ears” as a metaphor. It was used to write about people who always wanted to hear new ideas. Scholars think these people only wanted to hear what sounded good to them.

See: Acts 17:21

#### What were “myths”?

[4:4]

“Myths” were stories about events that did not really happen. Some scholars think Paul wrote about things people believed that went against the things the apostles taught.

See: 1 Timothy 1:4; 4:7; 6:3-5; Titus 3:9; 2 Peter 1:16

See: Apostle

**Advice to Translators**: Seek a word for “myth” that is not just a story, but a story which all people know but would be bad to actually believe to have happened.

#### What was the “work of an evangelist”?

[4:5]

An “evangelist”(εὐαγγελιστής/g2099) was a person who told other people about Jesus. They also told people that they needed to believe in Jesus.

See: Acts 21:8; Ephesians 4:11

See: Gifts of the Holy Spirit

#### Why did Paul write “I am already being poured out”?

[4:6]

According to the Law of Moses, people often poured wine over an offering just before it was burned up. Paul used the idea of “being poured out” as a metaphor to say that he had offered his life to Jesus. That is, he served Jesus in everything he did. He was now close to finishing his work because he thought he would die soon.

See: Number 15:4-10; Philippians 2:17

See: Law of Moses; Offer (Offering); Metaphor

#### What was Paul’s “departure”?

[4:6]

Paul wrote that the end of his life would be soon when he wrote that the time of his “departure” was soon. This is the time when he would leave the earth and go to live with God in heaven forever.

See: Philippians 1:21-24; 2 Peter 1:14-15

See: Heaven

#### How did Paul compete in the “good contest” and “finished the race”?

[4:7]

Many times an athlete had difficulties to reach his goal. However, they continued to work hard and never quit. Paul used this idea as a metaphor to write about his work to tell other people about the gospel. Paul, too, faced many difficult times. However, he continued to serve God with everything he had. He worked hard to finish the work God gave him to do (see: 1 Corinthians 9:24-27).

See: Acts 20:24; 1 Timothy 6:12

See: Metaphor; Gospel

#### What was the “crown of righteousness”?

[4:8]

Athletes who won an athletic event received a prize. Often times that prize was a crown of leaves and branches. Here again, Paul used a metaphor to write that God has a crown waiting for Paul in heaven. Some scholars think Paul thought of the crown as a reward for those who did many things that honored God. Other scholars think Paul wrote about a different crown, which someone received when they were at peace with God.

See: 1 Corinthians 9:25; 2 Timothy 2:5; James 1:12; 1 Peter 5:4; Revelation 2:10

See: Crown; Heaven; Reward

4:9-22

#### How did Demas love “this present world”?

[4:10]

Demas left Paul. Paul wrote that Demas loved the “present” world. That is, he loved the world, which sinned against God. Demas wanted to do the things he wanted to do more than he wanted to do the things that honored God.

See: 1 John 2:15-17

See: World; Sin

#### What was Paul’s “cloak”?

[4:13]

A cloak was an outer garment, a piece of clothing someone wore outside of their other clothes. It was round, with a hole in the middle for the head. It was made of heavy fabric and was used to keep warm. Paul wanted his cloak since winter was coming (see: 4:21).

**Advice to translators**: A cloak was a type of coat. However, it did not look like the coats that people wear today.

#### What were Paul’s “books” and “parchments”?

[4:13]

Paul wrote about books and parchments. These were notebooks or scrolls or books. Some scholars think the parchments were Paul’s own writings, perhaps unfinished letters that were not yet sent out to other people.

See: Scroll

#### Why did Paul write “the Lord will repay” Alexander?

[4:14]

Alexander did many wrong things against Paul. Instead of taking revenge, Paul wrote that the Lord will “repay” Alexander. That is, he will give Alexander what he deserves. Paul wrote specifically about the punishment Alexander would receive on the day of judgment when God judges the world.

See: Matthew 16:27; Romans 2:6, 12:19; Revelation 22:12

See: Day of Judgment

#### What was Paul’s “first defense”?

[4:16]

Paul wrote about his “first defense.” Some scholars think Pual wrote about his defending himself during his first imprisonment in Rome (see: Introduction to 2 Timothy). Other scholars think it was used to write about the first part of his trial. That is, the defense he gave at that time.

See: Acts 22:1; 24:10; 25:16

#### What was the “lion’s mouth”?

[4:17]

The Roman government in Paul’s day sometimes punished people by putting them in a den with lions. The lions attacked and killed the person being punished. Paul used this idea as a metaphor to write that he was about to be punished himself, but the Lord saved him from dying.

**Advice to translators**: A den is an area with many lions in it. It is close so that no one or no lion can escape.

See: 2 Corinthians 1:8-10

See: Rome (Roman Empire, Caesar); Metaphor

#### What was the Lord’s “heavenly kingdom”?

[4:18]

See: Heaven; Kingdom of God

#### 2 Timothy 4:1

##### this solemn command before God and Christ Jesus

"this serious command in the presence of God and Christ Jesus" or "this solemn command, having as my witnesses God and Christ Jesus"

##### the dead, and because of his appearing and his kingdom

"the dead when he returns to rule as king"

#### 2 Timothy 4:2

##### the word

"the message about Christ"

##### Reprove

tell someone he is guilty of doing wrong

##### exhort, with all patience and teaching

"exhort, and teach the people, and always be patient with them"

#### 2 Timothy 4:3

##### For the time will come when

"Because at some time in the future"

##### people

The context indicates that these will be people who are a part of the community of believers.

##### will not endure sound teaching

"will no longer want to listen to true teaching"

##### they will heap up for themselves teachers according to their own desires

"they will listen to many teachers who assure them that there is nothing wrong with their sinful desires"

##### who say what their itching ears want to hear

"who say only what they want so much to hear"

#### 2 Timothy 4:4

##### They will turn their hearing away from the truth

"They will no longer pay attention to the truth"

##### they will turn aside to myths

"they will pay attention to teachings that are not true"

#### 2 Timothy 4:5

##### be sober-minded

"think clearly"

#### 2 Timothy 4:6

##### I am already being poured out

Paul speaks of his readiness to die as if he were a cup of wine being poured out as a sacrifice to God.

##### The time of my departure has come

"Soon I will die and leave this world"

#### 2 Timothy 4:7

##### I have fought the good fight

"I have done my best"

##### I have kept the faith

"I have been faithful in doing my ministry" or "I have kept the teachings about what we believe from any error"

#### 2 Timothy 4:8

##### The crown of righteousness has been reserved for me

"God has reserved the crown of righteousness for me"

##### crown of righteousness

Just as the judge of a race gives a crown to the winner, when Paul finishes his life, God will declare that Paul is righteous.

##### on that day

"on the day when the Lord comes again" or "on the day when God judges people"

##### but also to all those who have loved his appearing

"but also he will give it to those who are eagerly waiting for him to return"

#### 2 Timothy 4:10

##### Demas ... Crescens ... Titus

These are names of men.

##### He loves this present world

Possible meanings are 1) he loves the temporary comforts of this world or 2) he is afraid he will die if he remains with Paul.

##### Crescens went ... and Titus went

These two men had left Paul, but Paul is not saying that they also "love this present world" like Demas.

##### Dalmatia

This is the name of a land region.

#### 2 Timothy 4:11

##### he is useful to me in the service

"he can help me in the ministry"

#### 2 Timothy 4:13

##### Carpus

This is the name of a man.

##### the books

This refers to scrolls. A scroll was a type of book made of one long sheet of papyrus or leather.

##### especially the parchments

"especially those made from animal skins"

#### 2 Timothy 4:14

##### Alexander the coppersmith displayed

"Alexander, who works with metal, displayed"

##### displayed many evil deeds against me

"did many evil things to me"

##### The Lord will repay him according to his deeds

"The Lord will punish him for what he has done"

#### 2 Timothy 4:15

##### opposed our words

"opposed the message that we teach"

#### 2 Timothy 4:16

##### At my first defense

"When I first appeared in court and explained my actions"

##### no one stood with me

"no one stayed with me and helped me"

##### May it not be counted against them

"May God not count it against them" or "I pray that God does not punish those believers for leaving me"

#### 2 Timothy 4:17

##### the Lord stood by me

"the Lord helped me"

##### so that, through me, the proclamation of the message might be fully accomplished ... the Gentiles might hear

"so that I was able to speak all of the Lord's message ... the Gentiles heard"

##### I was rescued out of the lion's mouth

"I was rescued from great danger"

#### 2 Timothy 4:19

##### house of Onesiphorus

"family of Onesiphorus"

##### Priscilla

This is the name of a woman.

##### Aquila

This is the name of a man.

##### Onesiphorus

This is the name of a man.

#### 2 Timothy 4:20

##### Erastus ... Trophimus

These are names of men.

##### Miletus

This is the name of a city to the south of Ephesus.

#### 2 Timothy 4:21

##### Eubulus ... Pudens, Linus

These are all names of men.

##### Do your best to come

"Try hard to come"

##### greets you, also Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers

"greets you. Pudens, Linus, Claudia, and all the brothers also greet you"

##### Claudia

This is a female name.

#### 2 Timothy 4:22

##### May the Lord be with your spirit

"I pray that the Lord makes your spirit strong." (Timothy)

##### May grace be with you

"I pray that the Lord shows his grace to all of you there." Here "you" is plural and refers to all the believers with Timothy.

## Translation Words

### Antioch

#### Facts:

Antioch was the name of two cities in the New Testament. One was in Syria, near the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. The other was in the Roman province of Pisidia, near the city of Colossae.

* The local church at Antioch of Syria was the first place where believers in Jesus were called "Christians." The church there was also active in sending out missionaries to reach the Gentiles.
* The leaders of the church in Jerusalem sent a letter to the believers in the church at Antioch in Syria to help them know they didn't have to keep the Jewish laws in order to be Christians.
* Paul, Barnabas and John Mark traveled to the Antioch in Pisidia to share the gospel. Some Jews from other cities came there to stir up trouble, and they tried to kill Paul. But many other people, both Jews and Gentiles, listened to the teaching and believed in Jesus.

(See also:[Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Colossae](../names/colossae.md), [John Mark](../names/johnmark.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [province](../other/province.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 06:5-6
* Acts 11:19-21
* Acts 11:26
* Galatians 02:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G491

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Antioch

### Aquila

#### Facts:

Aquila was a Jewish Christian from the province of Pontus, a region along the southern coast of the Black Sea.

* Aquila and Priscilla lived in Rome, Italy, for a time, but then the Roman emperor, Claudius, forced all Jews to leave Rome.
* After that Aquila and Priscilla traveled to Corinth, where they met the apostle Paul.
* They worked as tentmakers with Paul and also helped him with his missionary work.
* Both Aquila and Priscilla taught believers the truth about Jesus; one of those believers was a gifted teacher named Apollos.

(See also: [Apollos](../names/apollos.md), [Corinth](../names/corinth.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:02
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Aquila, Aquila's

### Asia

#### Facts:

In Bible times, "Asia" was the name of a province of the Roman Empire. It was located in the western part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Paul traveled to Asia and shared the gospel in several cities there. Among these were the cities of Ephesus and Colossae.
* To avoid confusion with modern day Asia, it may be necessary to translate this as, "the ancient Roman province called Asia" or "Asia Province."
* All of the churches referenced in Revelation were in the Roman province of Asia.

(See also: [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 06:8-9
* Acts 16:07
* Acts 27:1-2
* Revelation 01:4-6
* Romans 16:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Asia

### Christ

#### Related Ideas:

Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

#### Facts:

The terms "Messiah" and "Christ" mean "Anointed One" and refer to Jesus, God's Son.

* Both "Messiah" and "Christ" are used in the New Testament to refer to God's Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
* In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
* Often a word meaning "anointed (one)" is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
* Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
* The word "Christ" is often used as a title, as in "the Christ" and "Christ Jesus." "Christ" also came to be used as part of his name, as in "Jesus Christ." These names emphasize that God's Son is the Messiah, who will reign forever.
* Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" and "Christ" are spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesucristo," "Jezus Christus," "Yesus Kristus", and "Hesukristo" are some of the ways that these names are translated into different languages.
* For the term "Christ," some translators may prefer to use only some form of the term "Messiah" throughout.
* This term could be translated using its meaning, "the Anointed One" or "God's Anointed Savior."
* Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like "Christ" or "Messiah."
* The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term, as in "Christ, the Anointed One."
* Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
* Make sure the translations of "Messiah" and "Christ" work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [David](../names/david.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [anoint](../kt/anoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:1-3
* Acts 02:35
* Acts 05:40-42
* John 01:40-42
* John 03:27-28
* John 04:25
* Luke 02:10-12
* Matthew 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Christ, Christ Jesus, Jesus Christ, Messiah

### Corinth

#### Related Words:

Corinth, Corinthians

#### Facts:

Corinth was a city in the country of Greece, about 50 miles west of Athens. The Corinthians were the people who lived at Corinth.

* Corinth was the location of one of the early Christian churches.
* The New Testament books, 1 Corinthians and 2 Corinthians were letters written by Paul to the Christians living in Corinth.
* On his first missionary journey, Paul stayed in Corinth for approximately 18 months.
* Paul met the believers Aquila and Priscilla while in Corinth.
* Other early church leaders associated with Corinth include Timothy, Titus, Apollos, and Silas.

(See also: [Apollos](../names/apollos.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md), [Titus](../names/titus.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* 2 Corinthians 01:23-24
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2881, G2882

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Corinth, Corinthians

### David

#### Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

* When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
* David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
* King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
* David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
* Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(See also: [Goliath](../names/goliath.md), [Philistines](../names/philistines.md), [Saul (OT)](../names/saul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 17:12-13
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Samuel 05:02
* 2 Timothy 02:08
* Acts 02:25
* Acts 13:22
* Luke 01:32
* Mark 02:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1732, G1138

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

David, David's

### Ephesus

#### Related Words:

Ephesian

#### Facts:

Ephesus was an ancient Greek city on the west coast of what is now the present-day country of Turkey.

* During the time of the early Christians, Ephesus was the capital of Asia, which was a small Roman province at that time.
* Because of its location, this city was an important center of trade and travel.
* A well-known pagan temple for the worship of the goddess Artemis (Diana) was located in Ephesus.
* Paul lived and worked in Ephesus for more than two years and later appointed Timothy to lead the new believers there.
* The book of Ephesians in the New Testament is a letter that Paul wrote to the believers in Ephesus.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:32
* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 19:01
* Ephesians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2179, G2180, G2181

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Ephesian, Ephesians, Ephesus

### Eve

#### Facts:

This was the name of the first woman. Her name means "life" or "living."

* God formed Eve from a rib that he took out of Adam.
* Eve was created to be Adam's "helper." She came alongside Adam to assist him in the work that God gave them to do.
* Eve was tempted by Satan (in the form of a snake) and was the first to sin by eating the fruit that God said not to eat.

(See also: [Adam](../names/adam.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [Satan](../kt/satan.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 02:13
* 2 Corinthians 11:03
* Genesis 03:20
* Genesis 04:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2332, G2096

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Eve, Eve's

### Galatia

#### Related Words:

Galatian

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Galatia was a large Roman province located in the central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* Part of Galatia bordered the Black Sea, which was to the north. It was also bordered by the provinces of Asia, Bithynia, Cappadocia, Celicia, and Pamphylia.
* The apostle Paul wrote a letter to the Christians who lived in the province of Galatia. This letter is the New Testament book called "Galatians."
* One reason that Paul wrote his letter to the Galatians was to emphasize again the gospel of salvation by grace, not by works.
* The Jewish Christians there were incorrectly teaching the Gentile Christians there that it was necessary for believers to keep certain Jewish laws.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Cilicia](../names/cilicia.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [works](../kt/works.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:1-2
* 1 Peter 01:1-2
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 16:6-8
* Galatians 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G1053, G1054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Galatia, Galatians

### Gentile

#### Facts:

The term "Gentile" refers to anyone who is not a Jew. Gentiles are people who are not descendants of Jacob.

* In the Bible, the term "uncircumcised" is also used figuratively to refer to Gentiles because many of them did not circumcise their male children as the Israelites did.
* Because God chose the Jews to be his special people, they thought of the Gentiles as outsiders who could never be God's people.
* The Jews were also called "Israelites" or "Hebrews" at different times in history. They referred to anyone else as a "Gentile."
* Gentile could also be translated as "not a Jew" or "non-Jewish" or "not an Israelite" (Old Testament) or "non-Jew.".
* Traditionally, Jews would neither eat with nor associate with Gentiles, which at first caused problems within the early church.

(See also: [Israel](../kt/israel.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Jew](../kt/jew.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 09:13-16
* Acts 14:5-7
* Galatians 02:16
* Luke 02:32
* Matthew 05:47
* Matthew 06:5-7
* Romans 11:25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1471, G1482, G1484

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Gentile, Gentiles

### God

#### Related Ideas:

the living God

#### Facts:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

* God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
* He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
* God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
* He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
* People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
* God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
* The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being."
* Other ways to translate "God" could be "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
* Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
* Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
* Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god."
* The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(See also: [create](../other/creation.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 Samuel 10:7-8
* 1 Timothy 04:10
* Colossians 01:16
* Deuteronomy 29:14-16
* Ezra 03:1-2
* Genesis 01:02
* Hosea 04:11-12
* Isaiah 36:6-7
* James 02:20
* Jeremiah 05:05
* John 01:03
* Joshua 03:9-11
* Lamentations 03:43
* Micah 04:05
* Philippians 02:06
* Proverbs 24:12
* Psalms 047:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H136, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2623, H3069, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2312, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God, God's, the living God

### God the Father

#### Related Ideas:

Father, heavenly Father, my Father

#### Facts:

The terms "God the Father" and "heavenly Father" refer to Yahweh, the one true God. Another term with the same meaning is "Father," used most often when Jesus was referring to him.

* God exists as God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit. Each one is fully God, and yet they are only one God. This is a mystery that mere humans cannot fully understand.
* God the Father sent God the Son (Jesus) into the world, and he sends the Holy Spirit to his people.
* Anyone who believes in God the Son becomes a child of God the Father, and God the Holy Spirit comes to live in that person. This is another mystery that human beings cannot fully understand.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In translating the phrase "God the Father," it is best to translate "Father" with the same word that the language naturally uses to refer to a human father.
* The term "heavenly Father" could be translated by "Father who lives in heaven" or "Father God who lives in heaven" or "God our Father from heaven."
* Usually "Father" is capitalized when it refers to God.

(See also: [ancestor](../other/father.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 08:4-6
* 1 John 02:01
* 1 John 02:23
* 1 John 03:01
* Colossians 01:1-3
* Ephesians 05:18-21
* Luke 10:22
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 23:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, G3962

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Father, God the Father, heavenly Father, my Father

### Greek

#### Related Words:

Grecian

#### Facts:

The term "Greek" refers to the language spoken in the country of Greece. It is also a person from the country of Greece. Greek was also spoken throughout the Roman Empire. The term "Grecian" means "Greek-speaking."

* Since most non-Jewish people in the Roman Empire spoke Greek, Gentiles are often referred to as "Greeks" in the New Testament, especially when contrasted with Jews.
* The phrase "Grecian Jews" referred to Jews who spoke Greek in contrast to the "Hebraic Jews" who spoke only Hebrew, or perhaps Aramaic.
* Other ways to translate "Grecian" could include, "Greek-speaking" or "culturally Greek" or "Greek."
* When referring to non-Jews, "Greek" could be translated as "Gentile."

(See also: [Aram](../names/aram.md), [Gentile](../kt/gentile.md), [Greece](../names/greece.md), [Hebrew](../kt/hebrew.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:1
* Acts 09:29
* Acts 11:20
* Acts 14:1-2
* Colossians 03:11
* Galatians 02:3-5
* John 07:35

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3125, G1672, G1673, G1674, G1675, G1676

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Greek, Greeks, Grecian

### Holy Spirit

#### Related Ideas:

Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

#### Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

* The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
* Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
* Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
* When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
* The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
* Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
* Acts 08:17
* Galatians 05:25
* Genesis 01:1-2
* Isaiah 63:10
* Job 33:04
* Matthew 12:31
* Matthew 28:18-19
* Psalms 051:10-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Holy Spirit, Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit of the Lord Yahweh

### Iconium

#### Facts:

Iconium was a city in the south central part of what is now the country of Turkey.

* On Paul's first missionary journey, he and Barnabas went to Iconium after the Jews forced them to leave the city of Antioch.
* Then the unbelieving Jews and Gentiles in Iconium also planned to stone Paul and his coworkers, but they escaped to the nearby city of Lystra.
* After that the people from both Antioch and Iconium came to Lystra and stirred up the people there to stone Paul.

(See also: [Barnabas](../names/barnabas.md), [Lystra](../names/lystra.md), [stone](../kt/stone.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:01
* Acts 14:19-20
* Acts 16:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2430

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Iconium

### Jesus

#### Related Ideas:

the Lord Jesus

#### Facts:

Jesus is God's Son. The name "Jesus" means "Yahweh saves."

* In a miraculous way, the Holy Spirit caused the eternal Son of God to be born as a human being. His mother was told by an angel to call him "Jesus" because he was destined to save people from their sins.
* Jesus did many miracles that revealed that he is God and that he is the Christ, or the Messiah.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In many languages "Jesus" is spelled in a way that keeps the sounds or spelling as close to the original as possible. For example, "Jesu," "Jezus," "Yesus", and "Hesu" are some of the ways that this name is translated into different languages.
* Also consider how this names are spelled in a nearby local or national language.

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [God](../kt/god.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [high priest](../kt/highpriest.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [Mary](../names/mary.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:11
* 1 John 02:02
* 1 John 04:15
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* 2 Peter 01:02
* 2 Thessalonians 02:15
* 2 Timothy 01:10
* Acts 02:23
* Acts 05:30
* Acts 10:36
* Hebrews 09:14
* Hebrews 10:22
* Luke 24:20
* Matthew 01:21
* Matthew 04:03
* Philippians 02:05
* Philippians 02:10
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 01:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2424

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Jesus, the Lord Jesus

### Luke

#### Facts:

Luke wrote two books of the New Testament: the gospel of Luke and the book of Acts.

* In his letter to the Colossians, Paul refers to Luke as a doctor. Paul also mentions Luke in two of his other letters.
* It is thought that Luke was a Greek and a Gentile who came to know Christ. In his gospel, Luke includes several accounts that highlight Jesus' love for all peoples, both Jews and Gentiles.
* Luke accompanied Paul on two of his missionary journeys and helped him in his work.
* In some early church writings, it is said that Luke was born in the city of Antioch in Syria.

(See also: [Antioch](../names/antioch.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Philemon 01:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3065

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Luke, Luke's

### Lystra

#### Facts:

Lystra was a city in ancient Asia Minor that Paul visited on one of his missionary journeys. It was located in the region of Lycaonia, which is now in the modern-day country of Turkey.

* Paul and his companions escaped to Derbe and Lystra when they were threatened by the Jews in Iconium.
* In Lystra, Paul met Timothy, who became a fellow evangelist and church planter.
* After Paul healed a crippled man in Lystra, the people there tried to worship Paul and Barnabas as gods, but the apostles rebuked them and stopped them from doing that.

(See also: [evangelist](../kt/evangelism.md), [Iconium](../names/iconium.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 03:10-13
* Acts 14:06
* Acts 14:08
* Acts 14:21-22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3082

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Lystra

### Moses

#### Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

* When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
* God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
* After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
* Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(See also: [Miriam](../names/miriam.md), [Promised Land](../kt/promisedland.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:21
* Acts 07:30
* Exodus 02:10
* Exodus 09:01
* Matthew 17:04
* Romans 05:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Moses, Moses'

### Paul

#### Related Words

Saul

#### Facts:

Paul was a leader of the early church who was sent by Jesus to take the good news to many other people groups.

* Paul was a Jew who was born in the Roman city of Tarsus, and was therefore also a Roman citizen.
* Paul was originally called by his Jewish name, Saul.
* Saul became a Jewish religious leader and arrested Jews who became Christians because he thought they were dishonoring God by believing in Jesus.
* Jesus revealed himself to Saul in a blinding light and told him to stop hurting Christians.
* Saul believed in Jesus and began teaching his fellow Jews about him.
* Later, God sent Saul to teach non-Jewish people about Jesus and started churches in different cities and provinces of the Roman empire. At this time he started being called by the Roman name "Paul."
* Paul also wrote letters to encourage and teach Christians in the churches in these cities. Several of these letters are in the New Testament.

(See also: [christian](../kt/christian.md), [jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 01:03
* Acts 08:03
* Acts 09:26
* Acts 13:10
* Galatians 01:01
* Philemon 01:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G3972, G4569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Paul, Saul, Paul's

### Priscilla

#### Facts:

Priscilla and her husband Aquila were Jewish Christians who worked with the apostle Paul in his missionary work. She was also known as Prisca.

* Priscilla and Aquila had left Rome because the emperor had forced the Christians to leave there.
* Paul met Aquila and Priscilla in Corinth. They were tentmakers and Paul joined them in this work.
* When Paul left Corinth to go to Syria, Priscilla and Aquila went with him.
* From Syria, the three of them went to Ephesus. When Paul left Ephesus, Priscilla and Aquila stayed behind and continued the work of preaching the gospel there.
* They especially taught a man named Apollos in Ephesus who believed in Jesus and was a gifted speaker and teacher.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [Corinth](../names/corinth.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [Syria](../names/syria.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 16:19-20
* 2 Timothy 04:19-22
* Acts 18:01
* Acts 18:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's:

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Priscilla, Prisca

### Rome

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, the city of Rome was the center of the Roman Empire. It is now the capital city of the modern-day country of Italy.

* The Roman Empire ruled over all the regions around the Mediterranean Sea, including Israel.
* The term "Roman" referred to anything relating to the regions that the government in Rome controlled, including Roman citizens and Roman officials.
* The apostle Paul was taken to the city of Rome as a prisoner because he preached the good news about Jesus.
* The New Testament book of "Romans" is a letter that Paul wrote to the Christians in Rome.

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [the sea](../names/mediterranean.md), [Pilate](../names/pilate.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 01:15-18
* Acts 22:25
* Acts 28:14
* John 11:48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4514, G4516

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Rome, Roman, Romans

### Savior

#### Definitions:

The term "savior" refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

* In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel's Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
* In the New Testament, "Savior" is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* If possible, "Savior" should be translated with a word that is related to the words "save" and "salvation."
* Ways to translate this term could include "the One who saves" or "God, who saves" or "who delivers from danger" or "who rescues from enemies" or "Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin."

(See also: [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 04:10
* 2 Peter 02:20
* Acts 05:29-32
* Isaiah 60:15-16
* Luke 01:47
* Psalms 106:19-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3467, G4990

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Savior, savior

### Thessalonica

#### Facts:

In New Testament times, Thessalonica was the capital city of Macedonia in the ancient Roman empire. The people living in that city were called the "Thessalonians."

* The city of Thessalonica was an important seaport and was also located along a major road that connected Rome to the eastern part of the Roman empire.
* Paul, along with Silas and Timothy, visited Thessalonica on his second missionary journey and as a result, a church was established there. Later, Paul also visited this city on his third missionary journey.
* Paul wrote two letters to the Christians in Thessalonica. These letters (1 Thessalonians and 2 Thessalonians) are included in the New Testament.

(See also: [Macedonia](../names/macedonia.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:1
* 2 Thessalonians 01:01
* 2 Timothy 04:9-10
* Acts 17:01
* Philippians 04:14-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2331, G2332

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Thessalonica, Thessalonian, Thessalonians

### Timothy

#### Facts:

Timothy was a young man from Lystra. He later joined Paul on several missionary trips and helped shepherd new communities of believers.

* Timothy's father was a Greek, but both his grandmother Lois and his mother Eunice were Jews and believers in Christ.
* The elders and Paul formally appointed Timothy for the ministry by placing their hands on him and praying for him.
* Two books in the New Testament (I Timothy and 2 Timothy) are letters written by Paul that provide guidance to Timothy as a young leader of local churches.

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [Greek](../names/greek.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:02
* 1 Timothy 01:02
* Acts 16:03
* Colossians 01:01
* Philemon 01:01
* Philippians 01:01
* Philippians 02:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5095

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Timothy, Timothy's

### Titus

#### Facts:

Titus was a Gentile. He was trained by Paul to be a leader in the early churches.

* A letter written to Titus by Paul is one of the books of the New Testament.
* In this letter Paul instructed Titus to appoint elders for the churches on the island of Crete.
* In some of his other letters to Christians, Paul mentions Titus as someone who encouraged him and brought him joy.

(See also: [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [circumcise](../kt/circumcise.md), [Crete](../names/crete.md), [elder](../other/elder.md), [encourage](../other/courage.md), [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:10
* Galatians 02:1-2
* Galatians 02:3-5
* Titus 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Titus, Titus'

### Troas

#### Facts:

The city of Troas was a seaport located on the northwest coast of the ancient Roman province of Asia.

* Paul visited Troas at least three times during his trips to different regions to preach the gospel.
* On one occasion in Troas, Paul preached long into the night and a young man named Eutychus fell asleep while he was listening. Because he had been sitting in an open window, Eutychus fell down a long way and died. Through God's power, Paul raised this young man back to life.
* When Paul was in Rome, he asked Timothy to bring him his scrolls and his cloak, which he had left behind in Troas.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [preach](../other/preach.md), [province](../other/province.md), [raise](../other/raise.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [scroll](../other/scroll.md), [Timothy](../names/timothy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 02:13
* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Acts 16:08
* Acts 20:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5174

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Troas

### Tychicus

#### Facts:

Tychicus was one of Paul's fellow ministers of the gospel.

* Tychicus accompanied Paul on at least one of his missionary journeys to Asia.
* Paul described him as "beloved" and "faithful."
* Tychicus carried Paul's letters to Ephesus and Colosse.

(See also: [Asia](../names/asia.md), [beloved](../kt/beloved.md), [Colossae](../names/colossae.md), [Ephesus](../names/ephesus.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:11-13
* Colossians 04:09
* Titus 03:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G5190

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

Tychicus, Tychicus'

### age

#### Related Ideas:

aged, from ancient times, old age

#### Definition:

The term "age" refers to the length of time a person has lived. The term "aged" describes a person who is very old. The term "age" is also used to refer generally to a time period.

* Jesus refers to "this age" as the present time when evil, sin, and disobedience fill the earth.
* There will be a future age when righteousness will reign over a new heaven and a new earth.
* Other words used to express an extended period of time include "era" and "season."
* The phrase "ancient times" refers to times long ago.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "age" could also be translated as "era" or "number of years old" or "time period" or "time."
* The phrase "at a very old age" could be translated as "when he was very old" or "when he had lived a very long time."
* The phrase "this present evil age" means "during this time right now when people are very evil."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 29:28
* 1 Corinthians 02:07
* Hebrews 06:05
* Job 05:26

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5769, H7872, G165, G166, G1074

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

age, aged, ages, from ancient times, old age

### angel

#### Related Ideas:

archangel

#### Definition:

An angel is a powerful spirit being whom God created. Angels exist to serve God by doing whatever he tells them to do. The term "archangel" refers to the angel who rules or leads all the other angels.

* The word "angel" literally means "messenger."
* The term "archangel" literally means "chief messenger." The only angel referred to in the Bible as an "archangel" is Michael.
* In the Bible, angels gave messages to people from God. These messages included instructions about what God wanted the people to do.
* Angels also told people about events that were going to happen in the future or events that had already happened.
* Angels have God's authority as his representatives and sometimes in the Bible they spoke as if God himself was speaking.
* Other ways that angels serve God are by protecting and strengthening people.
* A special phrase, "angel of Yahweh," has more than one possible meaning: 1) It may mean "angel who represents Yahweh" or "messenger who serves Yahweh." 2) It may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself was talking.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "angel" could include "messenger from God" or "God's heavenly servant" or "God's spirit messenger."
* The term "archangel" could be translated as "chief angel" or "head ruling angel" or "leader of the angels."
* Also consider how these terms are translated in a national language or another local language.
* The phrase "angel of Yahweh" should be translated using the words for "angel" and "Yahweh." This will allow for different interpretations of that phrase. Possible translations could include "angel from Yahweh" or "angel sent by Yahweh" or "Yahweh, who looked like an angel."

(See also: [chief](../other/chief.md), [head](../other/head.md), [messenger](../other/messenger.md), [Michael](../names/michael.md), [ruler](../other/ruler.md), [servant](../other/servant.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 24:16
* Acts 10:3-6
* Acts 12:23
* Colossians 02:18-19
* Genesis 48:16
* Luke 02:13
* Mark 08:38
* Matthew 13:50
* Revelation 01:20
* Zechariah 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H47, H4397, G32, G743, G2465

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

angel, angels, archangel

### apostle

#### Related Ideas:

apostleship

#### Definition:

The "apostles" were men sent by Jesus to preach about God and his kingdom. The term "apostleship" refers to the position and authority of those who were chosen as apostles.

* The word "apostle" means "someone who is sent out for a special purpose." The apostle has the same authority as the one who sent him.
* Jesus' twelve closest disciples became the first apostles. Other men, such as Paul and James, also became apostles.
* By God's power, the apostles were able to boldly preach the gospel and heal people, and were able to force demons to come out of people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The word "apostle" can also be translated with a word or phrase that means "someone who is sent out" or "sent-out one" or "person who is called to go out and preach God's message to people."
* It is important to translate the terms "apostle" and "disciple" in different ways.
* Also consider how this term was translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [James (son of Zebedee)](../names/jamessonofzebedee.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [the twelve](../kt/thetwelve.md))

#### Bible References:

* Jude 01:17-19
* Luke 09:12-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G651, G652, G2491, G5376, G5570

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

apostle, apostles, apostles', apostleship

### appoint

#### Related Ideas:

appointment, direct, predetermine, put in place, reserve, select, set in place, set over, set up, set under

#### Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

* To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
* The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
* The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.
* To "predetermine" something is to decide beforehand that it will happen and make sure that it happens.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
* The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
* The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 08:11
* Acts 03:20
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 13:48
* Genesis 41:33-34
* Numbers 03:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2706, H2708, H3198, H3245, H3259, H4150, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5258, H5414, H5975, H6485, H6680, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7761, H7896, G322, G606, G2525, G2749, G2820, G3724, G4296, G4384, G4400, G4929, G5021, G5083, G5087

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appoint, appointed, appointed by lot, appointment, appoints, area ... reserved, directed, predetermined, put ... in place, reserved, selected, selects, set ... in place, set ... over, set ... up, set under

### ark

#### Related Ideas:

chest

#### Definition:

The term "ark" literally refers to a rectangular wooden box that is made to hold or protect something. An ark can be large or small, depending on what it is being used for.

* In the English Bible, the word "ark" is first used to refer to the very large, rectangular, wooden boat that Noah built to escape the worldwide flood. The ark had a flat bottom, a roof, and walls.
* Ways to translate this term could include "very large boat" or "barge" or "cargo ship" or "large, box-shaped boat."
* The Hebrew word that is used to refer to this huge boat is the same word used for the basket or box that held baby Moses when his mother put him in the Nile River to hide him. In that case it is usually translated as "basket."
* In the phrase "ark of the covenant," a different Hebrew word is used for "ark." This could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
* When choosing a term to translate "ark," it is important in each context to consider what size it is and what it is being used for.

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [basket](../other/basket.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* Exodus 16:33-36
* Exodus 30:06
* Genesis 08:4-5
* Luke 17:27
* Matthew 24:37-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H727, H8392, G2787

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ark, chest

### ash

#### Related Ideas:

powder

#### Definitions:

The term "ash" or "ashes" refers to the grey powdery substance that is left behind after wood is burned. It is sometimes used figuratively to refer to something that is worthless or useless.

* In the Bible sometimes the word "dust" is used when speaking about ashes. It can also refer to the fine, loose dirt that can form on dry ground.
* An "ash heap" is a pile of ashes.
* In ancient times, sitting in ashes was a sign of mourning or grieving.
* When grieving, it was the custom to wear rough, scratchy sackcloth and sit in ashes or sprinkle the ashes on the head.
* Putting ashes on the head was also a sign of humiliation or embarrassment.
* Striving for something worthless, is said to be like "feeding on ashes."
* When translating "ashes," use the word in the project language that refers to the burned-up remains after wood has burned.
* Note that an "ash tree" is a completely different term.

(See also: [fire](../other/fire.md), [sackcloth](../other/sackcloth.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:10
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Psalms 102:09
* Psalms 113:07

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H80, H665, H6083, H6368, H7834, G2868, G4700, G5077, G5522

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ash, ashes, powder

### astray

#### Related Ideas:

draw away, make a mistake, mislead, mistaken, wander

#### Definition:

The terms "stray" and "go astray" mean to disobey God's will. People who are "led astray" have allowed other people or circumstances to influence them to disobey God.

* The word "astray" gives a picture of leaving a clear path or a place of safety to go down a wrong and dangerous path.
* Sheep who leave the pasture of their shepherd have "strayed." God compares sinful people to sheep who have left him and "gone astray."
* To "draw away" someone or "mislead" someone is to lead him astray.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "go astray" could be translated as "go away from God" or "take a wrong path away from God's will" or "stop obeying God" or "live in a way that goes away from God."
* To "lead someone astray" could be translated as "cause someone to disobey God" or "influence someone to stop obeying God" or "cause someone to follow you down a wrong path."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [shepherd](../other/shepherd.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:07
* 2 Timothy 03:13
* Exodus 23:4-5
* Ezekiel 48:10-12
* Matthew 18:13
* Matthew 24:05
* Psalms 058:03
* Psalms 119:110

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5074, H5080, H7683, H7686, H8582, G1294, G4105, G5351

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

astray, drawn away, go astray, goes astray, gone astray, lead ... astray, leads ... astray, led ... astray, made ... mistake, mislead, misleading, misleads, misled, mistaken, stray, strayed, straying, strays, wander, went astray

### beg

#### Related Ideas:

ask, beggar, needy

#### Definition:

The term "beg" means to urgently ask someone for something. It often refers to asking for money, but it is also commonly used to refer to pleading for something.

* Often people beg or plead when they strongly need something, but don't know if the other person will give them what they ask for.
* A "beggar" is someone who regularly sits or stands in a public place to ask people for money.
* Depending on the context, this term could be translated as, "plead" or "urgently ask" or "demand money" or "regularly ask for money."

(See also: [plead](../other/plead.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 16:20
* Mark 06:56
* Matthew 14:36
* Psalm 045:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H34, H577, H1245, H6035, H7592, G154, G1189, G1871, G2065, G3726, G3870, G4319, G4434

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ask, asking, asks, beg, beggar, begged, begging, needy

### believe

#### Related Ideas:

be persuaded, belief, believer, have faith, persuade, persuasive

#### Definition:

The terms "believe" and "believe in" are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

* believe
* To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
* To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.
* To persuade someone is to get that person to believe that something is true.
* believe in
* To "believe in" someone means to "trust in" that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
* When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
* The phrase "have faith in" usually has the same meaning as "believe in."
* To "believe in Jesus" means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

In the Bible, the term "believer" refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

* The term "believer" literally means "person who believes."
* The term "Christian" eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

The term "unbelief" refers to not believing something or someone.

* In the Bible, "unbelief" refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one's Savior.
* A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an "unbeliever."

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "believe" and "believe in":

* To "believe" could be translated as to "know to be true" or "know to be right."
* To "believe in" could be translated as "trust completely" or "trust and obey" or "completely rely on and follow."

Translating "believer":

* Some translations may prefer to say "believer in Jesus" or "believer in Christ."
* This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means "person who trusts in Jesus" or "someone who knows Jesus and lives for him."
* Other ways to translate "believer" could be "follower of Jesus" or "person who knows and obeys Jesus."
* The term "believer" is a general term for any believer in Christ, while "disciple" and "apostle" were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.

Translating "unbelief" and "unbeliever":

* Other ways to translate "unbelief" could include "lack of faith" or "not believing."
* The term "unbeliever" could be translated as "person who does not believe in Jesus" or "someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [trust](../kt/trust.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:06
* Genesis 45:26
* Job 09:16-18
* Habakkuk 01:5-7
* Mark 06:4-6
* Mark 01:14-15
* Luke 09:41
* John 01:12
* Acts 06:05
* Acts 09:42
* Acts 28:23-24
* Romans 03:03
* 1 Corinthians 06:01
* 1 Corinthians 09:05
* 2 Corinthians 06:15
* Hebrews 03:12
* 1 John 03:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H3948, H6601, G544, G569, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

am persuaded, belief, believe, believed, believer, believers, believes, believing, has faith, persuade, persuaded, persuading, persuasiveness, were persuaded

### beloved

#### Related Ideas:

dear, lovely, treasured

#### Definition:

The term "beloved" is an expression of affection that describes someone who is loved and dear to someone else.

* The term "beloved" literally means "loved (one)" or "(who is) loved."
* God refers to Jesus as his "beloved Son."
* In their letters to Christian churches, the apostles frequently address their fellow believers as "beloved."
* Something or someone who is "lovely" attracts the love and good desires of others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This term could also be translated as "loved" or "loved one" or "well-loved," or "very dear."
* In the context of talking about a close friend, this could be translated as "my dear friend" or "my close friend." In English it is natural to say "my dear friend, Paul" or "Paul, who is my dear friend." Other languages may find it more natural to order this in a different way.
* Note that the word "beloved" comes from the word for God's love, which is unconditional, unselfish, and sacrificial.

(See also: [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:14
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 John 04:07
* Mark 01:11
* Mark 12:06
* Revelation 20:09
* Romans 16:08
* Song of Solomon 01:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H1730, H2532, H3033, H3039, H4261, G25, G26, G27, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beloved, dear, lovely, treasured

### betray

#### Related Ideas:

betrayal, betrayer, give over, hand over, traitor, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn over

#### Definition:

The term "betray" means to act in a way that deceives a person and allows other people to harm that person. A "betrayer" is a person who betrays a friend who was trusting him.

* Judas was "the betrayer" because he told the Jewish leaders how to capture Jesus.
* The betrayal by Judas was especially evil because he was an apostle of Jesus who received money in exchange for giving the Jewish leaders information that would result in Jesus' unjust death.
* "Betrayal" and "treachery" are two words for what happens when one person betrays another.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "betray" could be translated as "deceive and cause harm to" or "turn over to the enemy" or "treat treacherously."
* The term "betrayer" could be translated as "person who betrays" or "double dealer" or "traitor."

(See also: [Judas Iscariot](../names/judasiscariot.md), [Jewish leaders](../other/jewishleaders.md), [apostle](../kt/apostle.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* John 06:64
* John 13:22
* Matthew 10:04
* Matthew 26:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H898, H4042, H4603, H4604, H4820, H5462, H7411, G1560, G3860, G4273, G5483

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

betray, betrayal, betrayed, betrayer, betrayers, betraying, betrays, give ... over, given ... over, hand ... over, handed ... over, traitor, traitors, treacherous, treacherously, treachery, turn ... over

### boast

#### Related Ideas:

boastful

#### Definition:

The term "boast" means to talk proudly about something or someone. Often it means to brag about oneself.

* Someone who is "boastful" talks about himself in a proud way.
* God rebuked the Israelites for "boasting in" their idols. They arrogantly worshiped false gods instead of the true God.
* The Bible also talks about people boasting in such things as their wealth, their strength, their fruitful fields, and their laws. This means that they were proud about these things and did not acknowledge that God is the one who provided these things.
* God urged the Israelites to instead "boast" or be proud about the fact that they know him.
* The apostle Paul also talks about boasting in the Lord, which means being glad and thankful to God for all he has done for them.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "boast" could include "brag" or "talk proudly" or "be proud."
* The term "boastful" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "full of prideful talk" or "prideful" or "talking proudly about oneself."
* In the context of boasting in or about knowing God, this could be translated as "take pride in" or "exalt in" or "be very glad about" or "give thanks to God about."
* Some languages have two words for "pride": one that is negative, with the meaning of being arrogant, and the other that is positive, with the meaning of taking pride in one's work, family, or country.

#### Translation Suggestions:

(See also: [proud](../other/proud.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 20:11
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* James 03:14
* James 04:15-17
* Psalms 044:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1984, H3235, H6286, G212, G213, G1461, G2620, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3166

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

boast, boasted, boastful, boasting, boasts, reason for boasting

### brother

#### Related Ideas:

brotherhood

#### Definition:

The term "brother" usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

* In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
* In the New Testament, the apostles often used "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
* A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
* In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
* In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
* If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
* Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
* Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](../kt/apostle.md), [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [sister](../other/sister.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:26
* Genesis 29:10
* Leviticus 19:17
* Nehemiah 03:01
* Philippians 04:21
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2993, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brother, brother's, brotherhood, brothers, brothers'

### call

#### Related Ideas:

appeal to, invite, summon

#### Definition:

The terms "call to" and "call out" mean to say something loudly to someone who is not nearby. To "call" someone means to summon that person. There are also some other meanings.

* To "call out" to someone means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
* Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
* God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
* When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
* This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
* To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
* A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.
* To appeal to someone is to ask someone to do something.
* To invite someone is to ask them to do something that they might like to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
* The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
* When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
* "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
* "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
* To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
* The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
* To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
* To "call on" an official is to tell him to do what he is supposed to do as part of his job.
* To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
* The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
* When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: [pray](../kt/pray.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 18:24
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 01:09
* Ephesians 04:01
* Galatians 01:15
* Matthew 02:15
* Philippians 03:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2199, H3259, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G1528, G1793, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G3870, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

appeal to, appealed to, appealing to, call, called, called on, called out, calling, calling out, calls, calls out, invite, invited, summon, summoned, summoning

### clean

#### Related Ideas:

cleanness, cleanse, unclean, uncleanness, wash

#### Definition:

The term "clean" literally means to not have any dirt or stain. In the Bible, words like "clean" and "washed" are often used figuratively to mean, "pure," "holy," "free from sin," or "innocent".

* "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
* In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
* A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
* Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

* God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
* People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
* If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
* Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
* This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
* In another figurative sense, "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "clean":

* This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
* Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
* "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
* Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.

Translating "unclean""

* The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
* When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
* The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 07:02
* Genesis 07:08
* Deuteronomy 12:15
* Psalms 051:07
* Proverbs 20:30
* Ezekiel 24:13
* Matthew 23:27
* Luke 05:13
* Acts 08:07
* Acts 10:27-29
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H1351, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6663, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514, G2839, G2840

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clean, cleaned, cleanness, cleans, cleanse, cleansed, cleanses, cleansing, purge, unclean, uncleanness, wash, washed, washes, washing

### command

#### Related Ideas:

commandment, forbid, order, requirement, solemn command

#### Definition:

The term to "command" means to order someone to do something. A "command" or "commandment" is what the person was ordered to do.

* Although these terms have basically the same meaning, "commandment" often refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
* A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
* To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.
* To "forbid" is to command that someone not do something.

#### Translation Suggestions

* It is best to translate this term differently from the term "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
* Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
* Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See [decree](../other/decree.md), [statute](../other/statute.md), [law](../other/law.md), [Ten Commandments](../other/tencommandments.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 01:06
* Matthew 01:24
* Matthew 22:38
* Matthew 28:20
* Numbers 01:17-19
* Romans 07:7-8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H560, H565, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3245, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4687, H4931, H5713, H5749, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3143, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4487, G5506

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

command, commanded, commanding, commandment, commandments, commands, forbid, forbidden, forbidding, give ... solemn command, given ... solemn commands, given an order, given orders, order, ordered, orders, requirement, solemn commands

### commit

#### Related Ideas:

commitment

#### Definition:

The terms "commit" and "commitment" refer to making a decision or promising to do something.

* A person who promises to do something is also described as being "committed" to doing it.
* To "commit" to someone a certain task means to assign that task to that person. For example, in 2 Corinthians Paul says that God has "committed" (or "given") to us the ministry of helping people be reconciled to God.
* To "commit" something to someone is to give that thing completely to that person.
* To "commit" someone to another person is to put someone either in the care of or under the guard of that other person.
* The terms "commit" and "committed" also often refer to doing a certain wrong action such as "commit a sin" or "commit adultery" or "commit murder."
* The expression "committed to him the task" could also be translated as "gave him the task" or "entrusted to him the task" or "assigned the task to him."
* The term "commitment" could be translated by, "task that was given" or "promise that was made," depending on the context.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [promise](../kt/promise.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 28:07
* 1 Peter 02:21-23
* Jeremiah 02:12-13
* Matthew 13:41
* Psalm 058:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H539, H817, H1361, H1497, H1500, H1540, H1556, H2181, H2388, H2398, H2399, H2403, H4560, H4603, H5003, H5753, H5766, H5771, H6213, H6466, H7683, H7760, H7847, G264, G2038, G2716, G3429, G3431, G3860, G3872, G3908, G4102, G4203

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

commit, commitment, commits, committed, committing

### conscience

#### Definition:

The conscience is the part of a person's thinking through which God makes him aware that he is doing something sinful.

* God gave people a conscience to help them know the difference between what is right and what is wrong.
* A person who obeys God is said to have a "pure" or "clear" or "clean" conscience.
* If a person has a "clear conscience" it means that he is not hiding any sin.
* If someone ignores their conscience and no longer feels guilty when he sins, this means his conscience is no longer sensitive to what is wrong. The Bible calls this a "seared" conscience, one that is "branded" as if with a hot iron. Such a conscience is also called "insensitive" and "polluted."
* Possible ways to translate this term could include, "inner moral guide" or "moral thinking."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:19
* 1 Timothy 03:09
* 2 Corinthians 05:11
* 2 Timothy 01:03
* Romans 09:01
* Titus 01:15-16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G4893

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

conscience, consciences

### corrupt

#### Related Ideas:

corruption, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

#### Definition:

The terms "corrupt" and "corruption" refer to a state of affairs in which people have become ruined, immoral, or dishonest.

* The term "corrupt" literally means to be "bent" or "broken" morally.
* A person who is corrupt has turned away from truth and is doing things that are dishonest or immoral.
* To corrupt someone means to influence that person to do dishonest and immoral things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "corrupt" could be translated as to "influence to do evil" or to "cause to be immoral."
* A corrupt person could be described as a person "who has become immoral" or "who practices evil."
* This term could also be translated as "bad" or "immoral" or "evil."
* The term "corruption" could be translated as "the practice of evil" or "evil" or "immorality."
* Something that cannot be corrupted is "incorruptible" and is characterized as having "incorruptibility."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 20:42-44
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Genesis 06:12
* Matthew 12:33-35
* Psalm 014:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2254, H2610, H3891, H4889, H7843, H7844, G861, G1311, G2704, G3392, G3394, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

corrupt, corrupted, corrupting, corruption, corruptly, corrupts, depraved, flawed, incorruptibility, incorruptible

### crown

#### Related Ideas:

crest, garland, wreath

#### Definition:

A crown is a decorative, circular headpiece worn on the head of rulers such as kings and queens. The term to "crown" means to put a crown on someone's head; figuratively it means to "honor."

* Crowns are usually made of gold or silver, and are embedded with precious gems such as emeralds and rubies.
* A crown is a symbol of a king's power and wealth.
* By contrast, the crown made of thorn branches that the Roman soldiers placed on Jesus' head was meant to mock him and hurt him.
* If a person is "crowned," this means that a crown was put on his head.
* In ancient times, winners of athletic contests would be awarded a crown made out of olive branches. The apostle Paul mentions this crown in his second letter to Timothy.
* A "crest" is a crown or a piece of metal or expensive wood with a design on it or something else that people recognize as a symbol of the king or another official. A person whom the official wants to honor will wear the "crest" or put it on the animal that he rides or that pulls his chariot.
* A "garland" and "a wreath" are a crown or necklace made of flowers or leaves.

Sometimes "crown" is used figuratively.

* The figurative use of to "crown" means to honor someone. We honor God by obeying him and praising him to others. This is like putting a crown on him and acknowledging that he is King.
* Pauls calls fellow believers his "joy and crown." In this expression, "crown" is used figuratively to mean that Paul has been greatly blessed and honored by how these believers have remained faithful in serving God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When used figuratively, "crown" could be translated as "prize" or "honor" or "reward."
* The figurative use of to "crown" could be translated as to "honor" or to "decorate."
* The expression, "he was crowned with glory and honor" could be translated as, "glory and honor were bestowed on him" or "he was given glory and honor" or "he was endowed with glory and honor."

(See also: [glory](../kt/glory.md), [king](../other/king.md), [olive](../other/olive.md))

#### Bible References:

* John 19:03
* Lamentations 05:16
* Matthew 27:29
* Philippians 04:01
* Psalms 021:03
* Revelation 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3803, H3804, H5145, H5849, H5850, H6936, G1238, G4735, G4737

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crest, crown, crowned, crowns, garland, wreath

### day

#### Related Ideas:

daily, daytime, morning, today

#### Definition:

The term "day" literally refers to a period of time lasting 24 hours beginning at sundown. It is also used figuratively.

* For the Israelites and the Jews, a day began at sunset of one day and ended at sunset of the next day.
* Sometimes the term "day" is used figuratively to refer to a longer period of time, such as the "day of Yahweh" or "last days."
* Some languages will use a different expression to translate these figurative uses or will translate "day" nonfiguratively.
* Other translations of "day" could include, "time" or "season" or "occasion" or "event," depending on the context.

(See also: [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [last day](../kt/lastday.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 20:06
* Daniel 10:04
* Ezra 06:15
* Ezra 06:19
* Matthew 09:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3117, H3118, H3119, H6242, G2250, G4594

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

daily, day, day's, days, days', daytime, morning, today

### death

#### Related Ideas:

breathed their last, dead, deadly, deadness, deathly, die, lethal, mortal, stop breathing

#### Definition:

This term is used to refer to both physical and spiritual death. Physically, it refers to when the physical body of a person stops living. Spiritually, it refers to sinners being separated from a holy God because of their sin.

#### 1. Physical death

* To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
* A person's spirit leaves his body when he dies.
* When Adam and Eve sinned, physical death came into the world.
* The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.
* The words "deadly" and "lethal" describe something that causes someone to die.
* Something that is "mortal" can die; it does not live forever.

#### 2. Spiritual death

* Spiritual death is the separation of a person from God.
* Adam died spiritually when he disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
* Every descendant of Adam is a sinner, and is spiritually dead. God makes us spiritually alive again when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* To translate the words "die," death," and dead," it is usually best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death. This is true both when “death” refers to physical death and when it refers to spiritual death.
* In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
* The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died."
* The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [life](../kt/life.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:21
* 1 Thessalonians 4:17
* Acts 10:42
* Acts 14:19
* Colossians 2:15
* Colossians 2:20
* Genesis 2:15-17
* Genesis 34:27
* Matthew 16:28
* Romans 5:10
* Romans 5:12
* Romans 6:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H7819, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

about to die, breathed ... last, causes ... death, dead, deadly, deadness, death, deathly, deaths, die, die with, died, dies, dying, fatal, lethal, mortal, stop breathing, stops breathing

### descendant

#### Related Ideas:

descend, posterity

#### Definition:

A "descendant" is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

* For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
* A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
* The phrase "descended from" is another way of saying "a descendant of" as in "Abraham was descended from Noah." This could also be translated as "from the family line of."
* A person's "posterity" is all of his descendants.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [Jacob](../names/jacob.md), [Noah](../names/noah.md), [twelve tribes of Israel](../other/12tribesofisrael.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 09:4-5
* Acts 13:23
* Deuteronomy 02:20-22
* Genesis 10:1
* Genesis 28:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1247, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6631, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G3624, G4690

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

clans descended, descend, descendant, descendants, descended, posterity

### destroy

#### Related Ideas:

break down, bring ... to nothing, destruction, remove, cut to pieces, demolish, destroyer, destructive, downfall, overthrow, pass away, put an end to, shatter, spoil, throw down, waste away

#### Definition:

To destroy something is to completely make an end to it, so that it no longer exists.

* The term "destroyer" literally means "person who destroys."
* This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
* When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
* In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.
* The word "overthrown" is a metaphor that speaks of a ruler or a great city as if it were a person sitting or standing on a high place whom another person has pushed off of the high place and who is now lying helpless.

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [Egypt](../names/egypt.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Passover](../kt/passover.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 12:23
* Hebrews 11:28
* Jeremiah 06:26
* Judges 16:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1760, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H2865, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H3832, H4191, H4229, H4288, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5486, H5487, H5493, H5595, H5642, H5674, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7112, H7701, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8213, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G684, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2704, G3089, G3639, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

an end is put to, be destroyed, break ... down, breaking ... down, breaks ... down, bring ... to nothing, broke to pieces, broken, broken to pieces, brought ... down, brought ... to nothing, complete destruction, completely destroy, completely destroyed, crashing sound, cut ... to pieces, cut into pieces, cuts ... into pieces, demolish, destroy, destroy ... completely, destroyed, destroyer, destroyers, destroying, destroys, destruction, destructive, downfall, overthrew, overthrown, pass away, put an end to, shatter, shattered, shattering, spoil, throw down, throws ... down, thrown down, wasting away

### discipline

#### Related Ideas:

idle, confront, disorderly, self-discipline, train

#### Definition:

The term "discipline" refers to training people to obey a set of guidelines for moral behavior.

* Parents discipline their children by providing moral guidance and direction for them and teaching them to obey.
* Similarly, God disciplines his children to help them produce healthy spiritual fruit in their lives, such as joy, love, and patience.
* Discipline involves instruction regarding how to live to please God, as well as punishment for behavior that is against God's will.
* Self-discipline is the process of applying moral and spiritual principles to one's own life.
* To "confront" someone is to try to force him to stop doing what he is doing, either by speaking strongly to him or by physically preventing him from continuing.
* To be "disorderly" is to reject discipline and correction, either by being idle or by doing harmful things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "discipline" could be translated as "train and instruct" or "morally guide" or "punish for wrongdoing."
* The noun "discipline" could be translated as "moral training" or "punishment" or "moral correction" or "moral guidance and instruction."

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 06:4
* Hebrews 12:05
* Proverbs 19:18
* Proverbs 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3198, H3256, H3925, H4148, H7378, H8433, G812, G1651, G3809, G3810, G3811, G4995

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

are ... idle, confronted, discipline, disciplined, disciplines, disorderly, no discipline, self-discipline, trained, training, trains, untrained, were ... idle

### dishonor

#### Related Ideas:

dishonorable, lightly esteemed

#### Definition:

The term "dishonor" means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

* The term "dishonorable" describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
* Sometimes "dishonorable" is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
* Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
* The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
* The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
* This could be translated as to "not honor" or to "treat with no respect."
* The noun "dishonor" could be translated as "disrespect" or "loss of honor."
* Depending on the context, "dishonorable" could also be translated as "not honorable" or "shameful" or "not worthwhile" or "not valuable."
* A person who is "lightly esteemed" is dishonored by people who refuse to give him the honor he deserves.

(See also: [disgrace](../other/disgrace.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:10
* 1 Samuel 20:34
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Ezekiel 22:07
* John 08:48
* Leviticus 18:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H2490, H2781, H3637, H3639, H5006, H5034, H6173, H7034, H7036, H7043, G818, G819, G820, G2617

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dishonor, dishonorable, dishonored, dishonors, lightly esteemed

### doctrine

#### Related Ideas:

beliefs, learning

#### Definition:

The word "doctrine" literally means "teaching." It usually refers to religious teaching.

* In the context of Christian teachings, "doctrine" refers to all teachings about God—Father, Son and Holy Spirit–including all his character qualities and everything he has done.
* It also refers to everything God teaches Christians about how to live holy lives that bring glory to him.
* The word "doctrine" is sometimes also used to refer to false or worldly religious teachings that come from human beings. The context makes the meaning clear.
* This term could also be translated as "teaching."

(See also: [teach](../other/teach.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* 2 Timothy 03:16-17
* Mark 07:6-7
* Matthew 15:7-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3948, G1319, G2085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beliefs, doctrine, doctrines, learning

### endure

#### Related Ideas:

endurance, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

#### Definition:

The term "endure" means to last a long time or to bear something difficult with patience.

* It also means to stand firm when times of testing come, without giving up.
* The term "endurance" can mean "patience" or "bearing up under a trial" or "persevering when being persecuted."
* The encouragement to Christians to "endure to the end" is telling them to obey Jesus, even if this causes them to suffer.
* To "endure suffering" can also mean to "experience suffering."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate the term "endure" could include "persevere" or "keep believing" or "continue to do what God wants you to do" or "stand firm."
* In some contexts, to "endure" could be translated as to "experience" or to "go through."
* With the meaning of lasting for a long time, the term "endure" could also be tranlsated as "last" or "continue." The phrase "will not endure" could be translated as "will not last" or "will not continue to survive."
* Ways to translate "endurance" could include "perseverance" or "continuing to believe" or "remaining faithful."

(See also: [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* James 01:03
* James 01:12
* Luke 21:19
* Matthew 13:21
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H386, H3201, H3557, H5331, H5375, H5975, H6965, G430, G907, G1526, G2005, G2076, G2594, G3306, G4722, G5278, G5281, G5297, G5342

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

endurance, endure, endured, endures, enduring, patient endurance, put up with, resist, stand

### evangelist

#### Definition:

An "evangelist" is a person who tells other people the good news about Jesus Christ.

* The literal meaning of "evangelist" is "someone who preaches the good news."
* Jesus sent his apostles out to spread the good news about how to be part of God's kingdom through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice for sin.
* All Christians are exhorted to share this good news.
* Some Christians are given a special spiritual gift to effectively tell the gospel to others. These people are said to have the gift of evangelism and are called "evangelists."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "evangelist" could be translated as "someone who preaches the good news" or "teacher of the good news" or "person who proclaims the good news (about Jesus)" or "good news proclaimer."

(See also: [good news](../kt/goodnews.md), [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [gift](../kt/gift.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:05
* Ephesians 04:11-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2099

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

evangelist, evangelists

### evil

#### Related Ideas:

deal violently, displeasing, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly

#### Definition:

The terms "evil" and "wicked" both refer to anything that is opposed to God's holy character and will.

* While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
* The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
* The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
* Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
* Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 24:11
* 1 Timothy 06:10
* 3 John 01:10
* Genesis 02:17
* Genesis 06:5-6
* Job 01:01
* Job 08:20
* Judges 09:57
* Luke 06:22-23
* Matthew 07:11-12
* Proverbs 03:07
* Psalms 022:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H1100, H1431, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2554, H2555, H5765, H2162, H2248, H2254, H3238, H3399, H3415, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5771, H5807, H5999, H6090, H6184, H6293, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, H7701, H8133, G92, G93, G94, G932, G983, G984, G987, G988, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G4550, G5337

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deal violently, deal worse, displeasing, do ... evil, do ... violence, done ... violence, evil, evil actions, evil deeds, evil plans, evils, fraudulent, harm, harmful, violate, violated, violates, violence, violent, wicked, wicked deeds, wickedly, wickedness, wretched, wretchedly, wretches

### exhort

#### Related Ideas:

exhortation, urge

#### Definition:

The term "exhort" means to strongly encourage and urge someone to do what is right. Such encouragement is called "exhortation."

* The purpose of exhortation is to persuade other people to avoid sin and follow God's will.
* The New Testament teaches Christians to exhort each other in love, not harshly or abruptly.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "exhort" could also be translated as "strongly urge" or "persuade" or "advise."
* Make sure the translation of this term does not imply that the exhorter is angry. The term should convey strength and seriousness, but should not refer to angry speech.
* In most contexts, the term "exhort" should be translated differently than "encourage," which means to inspire, reassure, or comfort someone.
* Usually this term will also be translated differently from "admonish," which means to warn or correct someone for his wrong behavior.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:3-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 1 Timothy 05:02
* Luke 03:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5927, H6484, G3867, G3870, G3874

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

exhort, exhortation, exhortations, exhorted, exhorting, urge, urged

### faith

#### Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

* To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
* To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
* True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
* Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
* In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
* For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe."
* The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
* The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
* The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:07
* Acts 06:7
* Galatians 02:20-21
* James 02:20

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faith

### faithful

#### Related Ideas:

faithfully, faithfulness, reliable

#### Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

* A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
* A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
* Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

* The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
* In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
* God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "faithful" and "faithfulness"

* In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
* In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
* Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."

Translating "unfaithful" and "unfaithfulness"

* Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
* The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
* The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
* In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 24:49
* Leviticus 26:40
* Numbers 12:07
* Joshua 02:14
* Judges 02:16-17
* 1 Samuel 02:9
* Psalm 012:1
* Proverbs 11:12-13
* Isaiah 01:26
* Jeremiah 09:7-9
* Hosea 05:07
* Luke 12:46
* Luke 16:10
* Colossians 01:07
* 1 Thessalonians 05:24
* 3 John 01:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H2181, H2616, H2623, H4603, H4820, G569, G4102, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

faithful, faithful one, faithful people, faithfully, faithfulness, reliable, show ... self ... faithful

### father

#### Related Ideas:

ancestor, ancestral, beget, fatherless, forefather, grandfather, orphan

#### Definition:

When used literally, the term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

* A "grandfather" is someone's father's father or someone's mother's father.
* A "forefather" is one of a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* An "ancestral household" is a social unit of those people who are descended from one ancestor.
* A person who is "fatherless" does not have a father.
* An "orphan" is a person who has no parents. In Bible times widows were often not able to care for their children, so a child with a mother but no father could also be thought of as an orphan.
* To "beget" someone is to become that person's father.

There are also several figurative uses of the term "father."

* The term "fathers" often refers to a person's male ancestors, such as his grandfather's grandfather.
* The term "father" can refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
* The apostle Paul called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

#### Translation Suggestions

* When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
* "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
* When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
* Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader."
* When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
* The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: [God the Father](../kt/godthefather.md), [son](../kt/son.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:02
* Acts 07:32
* Acts 07:45
* Acts 22:03
* Genesis 31:30
* Genesis 31:42
* Genesis 31:53
* Hebrews 07:4-6
* John 04:12
* Joshua 24:3-4
* Malachi 03:07
* Mark 10:7-9
* Matthew 01:07
* Matthew 03:09
* Matthew 10:21
* Matthew 18:14
* Romans 04:12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H539, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ancestor, ancestor's, ancestors, ancestors', ancestral, beget, begot, father, father's, fathered, fathering, fatherless, fathers, fathers', forefather, forefathers, grandfather, orphan, orphans

### fear

#### Related Ideas:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, coward, dismay, dread, fainthearted, fearful, fearlessly, fearsome, frighten, timid, unafraid

#### Definition:

The terms "fear" and "afraid" refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

* The term "fear" can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
* The phrase "fear of Yahweh," as well as related terms "fear of God" and "fear of the Lord," refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
* The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.
* "Anxiety" is fear about the future, what is going to happen.
* To be "alarmed" is to be surprised and afraid because something bad has suddenly happened.
* "Dread" is great fear.
* Someone who is "timid" is afraid to act because something bad might happen as a result.
* Someone who is "unafraid" is not afraid.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, to "fear" can be translated as to "be afraid" or to "deeply respect" or to "revere" or to "be in awe of."
* The term "afraid" could be translated as "terrified" or "scared" or "fearful."
* The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" could be translated as "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God" or "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply" or "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."
* The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
* Note that the phrase "fear of Yahweh" does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase "fear of the Lord" or "fear of the Lord God" is used instead.

(See also: [marvel](../other/amazed.md), [awe](../other/awe.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [power](../kt/power.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:18
* Acts 02:43
* Acts 19:15-17
* Genesis 50:21
* Isaiah 11:3-5
* Job 06:14
* Jonah 01:09
* Luke 12:05
* Matthew 10:28
* Proverbs 10:24-25

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H367, H926, H928, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7390, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1568, G1630, G1719, G2125, G5398, G5399, G5401

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

afraid, alarmed, anxiety, cowards, dismay, dismayed, dread, dreaded, fainthearted, fear, feared, fearful, fearful thing, fearlessly, fears, fearsome, frighten, frightened, timid, unafraid

### fig

#### Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

* Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
* Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
* Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
* In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
* The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
* Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

#### Bible References:

* Habakkuk 03:17
* James 03:12
* Luke 13:07
* Mark 11:14
* Matthew 07:17
* Matthew 21:18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1061, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fig, figs

### fir

#### Definition:

A fir tree is a kind of tree that stays green all year and has cones that contain seeds.

* Fir trees are also referred to as "evergreen" trees.
* In ancient times, the wood of fir trees was used for making musical instruments and for building structures such as boats, houses, and the temple.
* Some examples of fir trees mentioned in the Bible are pine, cedar, cypress, and juniper.

(See also: [cedar](../other/cedar.md), [cypress](../other/cypress.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 27:4-5
* Isaiah 37:24-25
* Isaiah 41:19-20
* Isaiah 44:14
* Isaiah 60:12-13
* Psalms 104:16-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H766, H1265, H1266

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fir, firs

### fool

#### Related Ideas:

folly, foolish, foolishly, foolishness, insane, insanity, out of his mind, senseless, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

#### Definition:

The term "fool" refers to a person who often makes wrong choices, especially choosing to disobey. The term "foolish" describes a person or behavior that is not wise.

* In the Bible, the term "fool" usually refers to a person who does not believe or obey God. This is often contrasted to the wise person, who trusts in God and obeys God.
* In the Psalms, David describes a fool as a person who does not believe in God, one who ignores all the evidence of God in his creation.
* The Old Testament book of Proverbs also gives many descriptions of what a fool, or foolish person, is like.
* The term "folly" refers to an action that is not wise because it is against God's will. Often "folly" also includes the meaning of something that is ridiculous or dangerous.
* A person who is "insane" or suffering from "insanity" is unable to know truth from error, right from wrong, or good from evil and often acts without knowing what he is doing.
* Something that is hollow has nothing on its inside.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "fool" could be translated as "foolish person" or "unwise person" or "senseless person" or "ungodly person."
* Ways to translate "foolish" could include "lacking understanding" or "unwise" or "senseless."

(See also: [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:17
* Ephesians 05:15
* Galatians 03:03
* Genesis 31:28
* Matthew 07:26
* Matthew 25:08
* Proverbs 13:16
* Psalms 049:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H191, H196, H200, H1197, H1198, H1984, H2973, H3684, H3687, H3688, H3689, H3690, H5014, H5034, H5036, H5039, H5528, H5529, H5530, H5531, H6612, H8417, H8604, G453, G454, G781, G801, G877, G878, G2757, G3150, G3154, G3471, G3472, G3473, G3474, G3912, G3913

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of disgraceful folly, acted ... foolishly, disgraceful folly, folly, fool, foolish, foolishness, fools, insane, insanity, out of ... mind, senseless, spoken ... foolishly, stupid, thoughtless, unwise

### found

#### Related Ideas:

establish, foundation, founder

#### Definition:

The verb "found" means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase "founded on" means supported by or based on. A "foundation" is the base of support on which something is built or created.

* The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
* The term "foundation" can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
* In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
* A "foundation stone" was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.
* To "establish" something is for a person to start or make or create something that he wants to endure for a long time.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The phrase "before the foundation of the world" could be translated as "before the creation of the world" or "before the time when the world first existed" or "before everything was first created."
* The term "founded on" could be translated as "securely built on" or "firmly based on."
* Depending on the context, "foundation" could be translated as "strong base" or "solid support" or "beginning" or "creation."

(See also: [cornerstone](../kt/cornerstone.md), [create](../other/creation.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 06:37-38
* 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
* Ezekiel 13:13-14
* Luke 14:29
* Matthew 13:35
* Matthew 25:34

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H134, H553, H787, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H3559, H3772, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H5975, H7760, H8356, G747, G950, G1457, G2310, G2311, G2602

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

established, establishes, found, foundation, foundations, founded, founder, founds, lay ... foundation, lay ... foundations

### fulfill

#### Related Ideas:

carry out, fill to the limit, finish, fulfillment, in full, make something full

#### Definition:

The term "fulfill" means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

* When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
* If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
* To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "fulfill" could be translated as "accomplish" or "complete" or "cause to happen" or "obey" or "perform."
* The phrase "has been fulfilled" could also be translated as "has come true" or "has happened" or "has taken place."
* Ways to translate "fulfill," as in "fulfill your ministry," could include "complete" or "perform" or "practice" or "serve other people as God has called you to do."

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [minister](../kt/minister.md), [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 02:27
* Acts 03:17-18
* Leviticus 22:17-19
* Luke 04:21
* Matthew 01:22-23
* Matthew 05:17
* Psalms 116:12-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H4390, H5487, H7999, G378, G4135, G4137, G4138, G5048, G5055

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

carried out, fill up ... to the limit, finishing, fulfill, fulfilled, fulfillment, fulfills, in full, make ... full

### gift

#### Related Ideas:

give, gracious gift

#### Definition:

The term "gift" refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

* Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called "gifts."
* In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
* The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
* In the New Testament, the term "gifts" is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "gift" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "something that is given."
* In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term "gift from the Spirit" could be translated as "spiritual ability" or "special ability from the Holy Spirit" or "special spiritual skill that God gave."

(See also: [spirit](../kt/spirit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 12:01
* 2 Samuel 11:08
* Acts 08:20
* Acts 10:04
* Acts 11:17
* Acts 24:17
* James 01:17
* John 04:9-10
* Matthew 05:23
* Matthew 08:4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5379, H7810, H7964, H8641, G331, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5485, G5486

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gift, gifts, give, gracious gift

### glory

#### Related Ideas:

beautiful, beauty, glorify, glorious, take pride

#### Definition:

In general, the term "glory" means honor, splendor, and extreme greatness. Anything that has glory is said to be "glorious."

* Sometimes "glory" refers to something of great value and importance. In other contexts it communicates splendor, brightness, or judgment.
* For example, the expression "glory of the shepherds" refers to the lush pastures where their sheep had plenty of grass to eat.
* Glory is especially used to describe God, who is more glorious than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything in his character reveals his glory and his splendor.
* The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

The term "glorify" means to show or tell how great and important something or someone is. It literally means to "give glory to."

* People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done.
* They can also glorify God by living in a way that honors him and shows how great and magnificent he is.
* When the Bible says that God glorifies himself, it means that he reveals to people his amazing greatness, often through miracles.
* God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to people the Son's perfection, splendor, and greatness.
* Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. When they are raised to life, they will be changed to reflect his glory and to display his grace to all creation.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "brightness" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."

The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."

The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."

The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."

"Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."

The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."

The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: [exalt](../kt/exalt.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Exodus 24:17
* Numbers 14:9-10
* Isaiah 35:02
* Luke 18:43
* Luke 02:09
* John 12:28
* Acts 03:13-14
* Acts 07:1-3
* Romans 08:17
* 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
* Philippians 02:14-16
* Philippians 04:19
* Colossians 03:1-4
* 1 Thessalonians 02:05
* James 02:1-4
* 1 Peter 04:15-16
* Revelation 15:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H1342, H1926, H1927, H1935, H1984, H2896, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H5278, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8231, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2570, G2744, G4888

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

beautiful, beauty, glories, glorified, glorifies, glorify, glorifying, glorious, glory, take pride

### god

#### Related Ideas:

disgusting figure, false god, goat idols, goddess, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

#### Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

* These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
* People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
* In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
* Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
* Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
* Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

* People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
* These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
* Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
* Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
* An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
* The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
* The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
* In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
* Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
* Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](../kt/god.md), [Asherah](../names/asherim.md), [Baal](../names/baal.md), [Molech](../names/molech.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [image](../other/image.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 35:02
* Exodus 32:01
* Psalms 031:06
* Psalms 081:8-10
* Isaiah 44:20
* Acts 07:41
* Acts 07:43
* Acts 15:20
* Acts 19:27
* Romans 02:22
* Galatians 04:8-9
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Colossians 03:05
* 1 Thessalonians 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1140, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

disgusting figure, disgusting figures, false god, goat idols, god, goddess, gods, idol, idol's, idolater, idolaters, idolatrous, idolatry, idols, idols'

### godly

#### Related Ideas:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, ungodliness, ungodly

#### Definition:

The term "godly" is used to describe a person who acts in a way that honors God and shows what God is like. "Godliness" is the character quality of honoring God by doing his will.

* A person who has godly character will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit, such as love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, and self control.
* The quality of godliness shows that a person has the Holy Spirit and is obeying him.

The terms "ungodly" and "godless" describe people who are in rebellion against God. Living in an evil way, without thought of God, is called "ungodliness" or "godlessness."

* The meanings of these words are very similar. However, "godless" and "godlessness" may describe a more extreme condition in which people or nations do not even acknowledge God or his right to rule them.
* God pronounces judgment and wrath on ungodly people, on everyone who rejects him and his ways.

#### Translation Suggestions:

The phrase "the godly" could be translated as "godly people" or "people who obey God."

The adjective "godly" could be translated as "obedient to God" or "righteous" or "pleasing to God."

The phrase "in a godly manner" could be translated as "in a way that obeys God" or "with actions and words that please God."

Ways to translate "godliness" could include "acting in a way that pleases God" or "obeying God" or "living in a righteous manner."

Depending on the context, the term "ungodly" could be translated as "displeasing to God" or "immoral" or "disobeying God."

The terms "godless" and "godlessness" literally mean that the people are "without God" or "having no thought of God" or "acting in a way that does not acknowledge God."

Other ways to translate "ungodliness" or "godlessness" could be "wickedness" or "evil" or "rebellion against God".

(See also [evil](../kt/evil.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 27:10
* Proverbs 11:09
* Acts 03:12
* 1 Timothy 01:9-11
* 1 Timothy 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:12
* Hebrews 12:14-17
* Hebrews 11:7
* 1 Peter 04:18
* Jude 01:16

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H120, H2611, H2612, H5760, H7563, G763, G764, G765, G2124, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2317

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

godless, godless actions, godlessness, godliness, godly, godly life, ungodliness, ungodly

### gold

#### Related Ideas:

golden, goldsmith, purest gold

#### Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

* In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
* These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
* In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
* Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
* When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
* Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.
* A "goldsmith" is a person who takes gold and makes it into useful things like jewelry.

(See also: [altar](../kt/altar.md), [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [silver](../other/silver.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:07
* 1 Timothy 02:8-10
* 2 Chronicles 01:15
* Acts 03:06
* Daniel 02:32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6337, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

gold, golden, goldsmith, goldsmiths, purest gold

### good

#### Related Ideas:

best, better, fair, good things, goodness, improved, prefer, proper, well

#### Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

* In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
* Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
* Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
* A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
* A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
* In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
* The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
* The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.
* Actions that are "proper" are those that are good and right for the situation in which they are done.
* "Goods" are good things, valuable possessions.
* To "prefer" something is to think it is better than other things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
* "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
* The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
* To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
* Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [profit](../other/profit.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 05:22-24
* Genesis 01:12
* Genesis 02:09
* Genesis 02:17
* James 03:13
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H155, H410, H1580, H1926, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3787, H3966, H4399, H5232, H6743, H7225, H7368, H7399, H7999, H8231, H8232, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1342, G1380, G1832, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2140, G2163, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2986, G3140, G4147, G4632, G4851, G5224, G5358, G5543, G5544, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

best, better, do ... good, fair, good, good things, goodness, goods, improved, made ... better, prefer, proper, seemed good, well

### grace

#### Related Ideas:

generous, gracious, graciously

#### Definition:

The word "grace" refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term "gracious" describes someone who shows grace to others.

* God's grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
* The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
* The expression to "find grace" is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways that "grace" could be translated include "divine kindness" or "God's favor" or "God's kindness and forgiveness for sinners" or "merciful kindness."
* The term "gracious" could be translated as "full of grace" or "kind" or "merciful" or "mercifully kind."
* The expression "he found grace in the eyes of God" could be translated as "he received mercy from God" or "God mercifully helped him" or "God showed his favor to him" or "God was pleased with him and helped him."

#### Bible References:

* Acts 04:33
* Acts 06:08
* Acts 14:04
* Colossians 04:06
* Colossians 04:18
* Genesis 43:28-29
* James 04:07
* John 01:16
* Philippians 04:21-23
* Revelation 22:20-21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, G5485, G5543

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act of grace, generous, grace, gracious, graciously, graciously given

### hand

#### Related Ideas:

handbreadth, handful, lay a hand on

#### Definition:

There are several figurative ways that "hand" is used in the Bible:

To "hand" something to someone means to put something into that person's hands.

The term "hand" is often used in reference to God's power and action, such as when God says "Has not my hand made all these things?"

Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.

Some other figurative uses of "hand" include:

To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."

To "save from the hand of" means to stop someone from harming someone else.

The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."

The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, "by the hand of the Lord" means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.

Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.

The term "laying on of hands" refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service or to pray for healing.

When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

#### Translation Suggestions

* These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
* The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
* When "hand" refers to the person, such as in "the hand of God did this," it could be translated as "God did this."
* An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
* To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
* The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
* In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: [adversary](../other/adversary.md), [bless](../kt/bless.md), [captive](../other/captive.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [power](../kt/power.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:25
* Acts 08:17
* Acts 11:21
* Genesis 09:05
* Genesis 14:20
* John 03:35
* Mark 07:32
* Matthew 06:03

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G710, G1188, G2176, G2902, G4084, G5495, G5496, G5497, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8042, H8168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

by the hand of, fist, from the hand of, hand, handbreadth, handed, handful, handfuls, handing, hands, lay a hand on, lays his hand on

### hard

#### Related Ideas:

hardly, hardness, hardship

#### Definition:

The term "hard" has several different meanings, depending on the context. It usually describes something that is difficult, persistent, or unyielding.

* An object that is "hard" is solid and firm. It is not easily broken, bent, dented, or pierced.
* Work that is "hard" is difficult to do.
* When a person works "hard", he does that work diligently and with a lot of effort to do it well.
* A person who "hardly" does something either does not do it completely or does it rarely.
* A person who goes through "hardship" is suffering or does not have what he needs.

The term "hard" can be used figuratively

* A person who has a "hard heart" is stubborn. He continues to disobey God and will not repent.
* A person whose heart is hardened has become stubbornly disobedient.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The terms "hardness" or "hardness of heart" or "hard heart" could be translated as "stubbornness" or "persistent rebellion" or "rebellious attitude" or "stubborn disobedience" or "stubbornly not repenting."
* The term "hardened" could also be translated as "stubbornly unrepentant" or "refusing to obey."
* "Do not harden your heart" could be translated as "do not refuse to repent" or "do not stubbornly keep disobeying."
* Other ways to translate "hard-hearted" could include "stubbornly disobedient" or "continuing to disobey" or "refusing to repent" or "always rebelling."
* In expressions such as "work hard" or "try hard," the term "hard" could be translated as "with perseverance" or "diligently."
* The expression "press hard against" could also be translated as "shove with force" or "push strongly against."
* To "oppress people with hard labor" could be translated as "force people to work so hard that they suffer" or "cause people to suffer by forcing them to do very difficult work."
* A different kind of "hard labor" is experienced by a woman who is about to deliver a baby.

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 11:23
* Deuteronomy 15:07
* Exodus 14:04
* Hebrews 04:07
* John 12:40
* Matthew 19:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H553, H1692, H2388, H2389, H2420, H2864, H3021, H3332, H3513, H3515, H3966, H4164, H4165, H4522, H4751, H4784, H4843, H5450, H5647, H5797, H5810, H5980, H5999, H6089, H6381, H7185, H7188, H7280, H8068, H8307, H8513, H8631, G917, G1421, G1422, G1423, G2205, G2478, G2553, G2872, G2873, G3425, G3433, G4053, G4183, G4456, G4457, G4641, G4642, G4643, G4645, G4912

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

hard, harden, hardened, hardening, hardens, harder, hardest, hardly, hardness, hardship, hardships

### head

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "head" is used with several figurative meanings.

* Often this term is used to refer to a ruler or to someone who has authority over people, as in "you have made me the head over nations."
* Jesus is called the "head of the church." Just as a person's head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his "body," the Church.
* The New Testament teaches that a husband is the "head" or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
* The term "head" can also represent the whole person, as in "this gray head," referring to an elderly person, or as in "the head of Joseph," which refers to Joseph.
* The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means" he will never cut or shave his hair."
* The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
* The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
* The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the "head of the street."

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "ruler" or "the one who leads and directs" or "the one who is responsible for."
* The expression "head of" can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person's name. For example, "the head of Joseph" could simply be translated as "Joseph."
* The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
* Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "beginning" or "source" or "ruler" or "leader" or "top."

(See also: [grain](../other/grain.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
* 1 Kings 08:1-2
* 1 Samuel 09:22
* Colossians 02:10
* Colossians 02:19
* Numbers 01:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H441, H1538, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

head, heads

### heart

#### Related Ideas:

kidneys

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

* To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
* The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with no holding back, with complete commitment and willingness.
* The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
* The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.
* The kidneys are also used as a synecdoche for the physical inner organs and as a metonym for a person's innermost thoughts and emotions.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
* Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
* If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires" or "inner self".
* Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
* The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
* The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
* Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:17
* 1 Thessalonians 02:04
* 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
* Acts 08:22
* Acts 15:09
* Luke 08:15
* Mark 02:06
* Matthew 05:08
* Matthew 22:37

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H7307, H7356, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heart, hearts, kidneys

### heaven

#### Related Ideas:

heavenly, in midair, overhead, sky

#### Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

* The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
* The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
* In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.
* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it is a way of referring to God. For example, when Matthew writes about the "kingdom of heaven" he is referring to the kingdom of God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When "heaven" is used figuratively, it could be translated as "God."
* For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
* The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
* The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 08:22-24
* 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
* 1 Thessalonians 04:17
* Deuteronomy 09:01
* Ephesians 06:9
* Genesis 01:01
* Genesis 07:11
* John 03:12
* John 03:27
* Matthew 05:18
* Matthew 05:46-48

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heaven, heavenly, heavens, in midair, overhead, skies, sky

### heir

#### Definition:

An "heir" is a person who legally receives property or money that belonged to a person who has died.

* In Bible times, the main heir was the firstborn son, who received most of the property and money of his father.
* The Bible also uses "heir" in a figurative sense to refer to person who as a Christian receives spiritual benefits from God, his spiritual father.
* As God's children, Christians are said to be "joint heirs" with Jesus Christ. This could also be translated as "co-heirs" or "fellow heirs" or "heirs together with."
* The term "heir" could be translated as "person receiving benefits" or whatever expression is used in the language to communicate the meaning of someone who receives property and other things when a parent or other relative dies.

(See also: [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [inherit](../kt/inherit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:1-2
* Galatians 04:07
* Genesis 15:01
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 20:14
* Mark 12:07
* Matthew 21:38-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1121, H3423, G2816, G2818, G2820, G4789

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heir, heirs

### holy

#### Related Ideas:

holiness, sacred, unholy

#### Definition:

The terms "holy" and "holiness" refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

* Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
* A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
* An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
* People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
* In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
* God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.
* Believers in Jesus are holy people, not because of what they have done, but rather because of their faith in the saving work of Jesus Christ. He is the one who makes them holy.
* When people of any religion, true or false, consider something "sacred," they consider it holy according to their religion.

Literally, the term "unholy" means "not holy." It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

* This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
* A thing that is called "unholy" could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term "sacred" describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

* In the Old Testament, the term "sacred" was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as "religious."
* "Sacred songs" and "sacred music" refer to music that was sung or played for God's glory. This could be translated as "music for worshiping Yahweh" or "songs that praise God."
* The phrase "sacred duties" referred to the "religious duties" or "rituals" that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.
* The phrase "sacred gifts" refers to things that someone has set apart for God and then given to God at the temple.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "holy" might include "set apart for God" or "belonging to God" or "completely pure" or "perfectly sinless" or "separated from sin."

To "make holy" is often translated as "sanctify" in English. It could also be translated as "set apart (someone) for God's glory."

Ways to translate "unholy" could include "not holy" or "not belonging to God" or "not honoring to God" or "not godly."

In some contexts, "unholy" could be translated as "unclean."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [consecrate](../kt/consecrate.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [set apart](../kt/setapart.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 28:22
* 2 Kings 03:02
* Lamentations 04:01
* Ezekiel 20:18-20
* Matthew 07:6
* Mark 08:38
* Acts 07:33
* Acts 11:08
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
* Colossians 01:22
* 1 Thessalonians 03:13
* 1 Thessalonians 04:07
* 2 Timothy 03:15
* 1 Timothy 05:10
* 2 Corinthians 09:12-15
* Revelation 16:06
* Revelation 20:9-10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G2150, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

holier, holiest, holiness, holy, holy duties, honored as holy, makes ... holy, sacred, sacred gifts, sacred places, unholy

### honor

#### Related Ideas:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honorable, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

#### Definition:

The terms "honor" and to "honor" refer to giving someone respect, esteem, or reverence.

* Honor is usually given to someone who is of higher status and importance, such as a king or God.
* God instructs Christians to honor others.
* Children are instructed to honor their parents in ways that include respecting them and obeying them.
* The terms "honor" and "glory" are often used together, especially when referring to Jesus. These may be two different ways of referring to the same thing.
* Ways of honoring God include thanking and praising him, and showing him respect by obeying him and living in a way that shows how great he is.
* To "esteem" someone is to consider him worthy of great honor.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "honor" could include "respect" or "esteem" or "high regard."
* The term to "honor" could be translated as to "show special respect to" or to "cause to be praised" or to "show high regard for" or to "highly value."

(See also: [dishonor](../other/dishonor.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [glory](../kt/glory.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 02:8
* Acts 19:17
* John 04:44
* John 12:26
* Mark 06:04
* Matthew 15:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1420, H1921, H1922, H1923, H1926, H1935, H2082, H2142, H3366, H3367, H3368, H3372, H3373, H3374, H3444, H3513, H3519, H3655, H3678, H5081, H5082, H5375, H5457, H6213, H6286, H6437, H6942, H6944, H6965, H7236, H7613, H7812, H8597, H8416, G820, G1391, G1392, G1741, G1784, G2151, G2233, G2570, G3170, G4411, G4586, G5091, G5092, G5093, G5399

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

dignified, esteem, held in honor, highly regarded, honor, honorable, honored, honoring, honors, of high standing, places of honor, recognition

### house

#### Related Ideas:

home, residence

#### Definition:

The term "house" is often used figuratively in the Bible.

* Sometimes it means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
* Often "house" refers to a person's descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
* The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
* In Hebrews 3, "God's house" is used as a metaphor to refer to God's people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
* A "residence" is any place in which people live without plans to move to another place.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
* The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
* Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
* The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells."
* "House of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [house of God](../kt/houseofgod.md), [household](../other/household.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:42
* Acts 07:49
* Genesis 39:04
* Genesis 41:40
* Luke 08:39
* Matthew 10:06
* Matthew 15:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1005, H4585, H5116, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

home, homes, house, house's, houses, residence

### household

#### Related Ideas:

household members

#### Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

* Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
* Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: [house](../other/house.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:10
* Galatians 06:10
* Genesis 07:01
* Genesis 34:19
* John 04:53
* Matthew 10:25
* Matthew 10:36
* Philippians 04:22

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624, G3626

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

household, household members, households, members of household

### in Christ

#### Related Ideas:

in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

#### Definition:

The phrase "in Christ" and related terms refer to the state or condition of being in relationship with Jesus Christ through faith in him.

* Other related terms include "in Christ Jesus, in Jesus Christ, in the Lord Jesus, in the Lord Jesus Christ."
* Possible meanings for the term "in Christ" could include "because you belong to Christ" or "through the relationship you have with Christ" or "based on your faith in Christ."
* These related terms all have the same meaning of being in a state of believing in Jesus and being his disciple.
* Note: Sometimes the word "in" belongs with the verb. For example, "share in Christ" means to "share in" the benefits that come from knowing Christ. To "glory in" Christ means to be glad and give praise to God for who Jesus is and what he has done. To "believe in" Christ means to trust him as Savior and know him.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, different ways to translate "in Christ" and "in the Lord" (and related phrases) could include:

"who belong to Christ"

"because you believe in Christ"

"because Christ has saved us"

"in service to the Lord"

"relying on the Lord"

"because of what the Lord has done."

People who "believe in" Christ or who "have faith in" Christ believe what Jesus taught and are trusting him to save them because of his sacrifice on the cross that paid the penalty for their sins. Some languages may have one word that translates verbs like "believe in" or "share in" or "trust in."

(See also: [Christ](../kt/christ.md), [Lord](../kt/lord.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [believe](../kt/believe.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:05
* 2 Corinthians 02:17
* 2 Timothy 01:01
* Galatians 01:22
* Galatians 02:17
* Philemon 01:06
* Revelation 01:10
* Romans 09:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G2962, G5547

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

in Christ, in Christ Jesus, in Jesus, in him, in the Lord, in the Lord Jesus, into Christ

### joy

#### Related Ideas:

enjoy, enjoyment, glad, gladness, greet, joyful, joyfulness, jubilant, merry-hearted, rejoice, source of gladness

#### Definition:

Joy is a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction that comes from God. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

* A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
* God is the one who gives true joy to people.
* Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
* Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.
* To "salute" is to greet a high-ranking government or military official.
* "Jubilant" is another word for "joyful."

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

* This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
* It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
* When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
* The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
* A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
* A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
* A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy."

#### Bible References:

* Nehemiah 08:10
* Psalm 048:02
* Isaiah 56:6-7
* Jeremiah 15:15-16
* Matthew 02:9-10
* Luke 15:07
* Luke 19:37-38
* John 03:29
* Acts 16:32-34
* Romans 05:1-2
* Romans 15:30-32
* Galatians 05:23
* Philippians 04:10-13
* 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
* 1 Thessalonians 05:16
* Philemon 01:4-7
* James 01:02
* 3 John 01:1-4

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1288, H1523, H1524, H1525, H2287, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2896, H2898, H3190, H4885, H5727, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H7965, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G782, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be glad, be merry, enjoy, enjoyed, enjoying, enjoyment, enjoys, glad, gladness, greet, greeted, greeting, greetings, greets, joy, joyful, joyful shouting, joyfully, joyfulness, jubilant, make ... glad, makes ... glad, merry-hearted, rejoice, rejoiced, rejoiced greatly, rejoices, rejoices greatly, rejoicing, shout for joy, shout joyfully, shout of joy, shouts of joy, source of gladness, was merry

### judge

#### Related Ideas:

act of judging, consider, decide, decision, give justice, give judgment, judgment, judgment seat

#### Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

* The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
* God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
* The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
* Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
* In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
* "Judgment" can refer to the ability to make decisions. A person with "sound judgment" is wise, able to make good decisions, while a person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.
* The "judgment seat" is a place where a judge sits while he listens to testimonies and gives his decision.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
* The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "opinion" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
* In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: [decree](../other/decree.md), [judge](../other/judgeposition.md), [judgment day](../kt/judgmentday.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:17
* 1 Kings 03:09
* Acts 10:42-43
* Isaiah 03:14
* James 02:04
* Luke 06:37
* Micah 03:9-11
* Psalm 054:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H2664, H2713, H2742, H2803, H2940, H3198, H4406, H4941, H6414, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H7081, H7378, H7379, H7663, H7760, H8196, H8199, H8201, G350, G968, G1097, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1380, G1492, G2233, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4997, G5272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of judgment, consider, considered, considering, decide, decided, decided on, decision, give justice, giving judgment, have decided, insightful decisions, judge, judged, judges, judging, judgment, judgment seat, judgments, renders judgment, will judge

### judge

#### Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
* After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called "judges" to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
* The term "judge" could also be called "decision-maker" or "leader" or "deliverer" or "governor," depending on the context.

(See also: [governor](../other/governor.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:08
* Acts 07:27
* Luke 11:19
* Luke 12:14
* Luke 18:1-2
* Matthew 05:25
* Ruth 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1781, H1782, H6414, H6416, H6419, H8199, G350, G1252, G1348, G2919, G2922, G2923

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

judge, judges, the judge, the judges, their judges, you judges

### kin

#### Related Ideas:

kindred, kinfolk, kinsman, relative

#### Definition:

The term "kin" refers to a person's blood relatives, considered as a group. The word "kinsman" refers specifically to a male relative.

* "Kin" can only refer to a person's close relatives, such as parents and siblings, or it can also include more distant relatives, such as an aunts, uncles, or cousins.
* In ancient Israel, if a man died, his nearest male relative was expected to marry his widow, manage his property, and help carry on his family name. This relative was called a "kinsman-redeemer."
* This term "kin" could also be translated as, "relative" or "family member."

#### Bible References:

* Romans 16:9-11
* Ruth 02:20
* Ruth 03:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H251, H1350, H1353, H1730, H4129, H4130, H4138, H4940, H7138, H7607, G1085, G4773

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kin, kindred, kinfolk, kinsfolk, kinsman, kinsmen, relative, relatives

### kind

#### Definition:

The terms "kind" and "kinds" refer to groups or classifications of things that are connected by shared characteristics.

* In the Bible, this term is specifically used to refer to the distinctive kinds of plants and animals that God made when he created the world.
* Often there are many different variations or species within each "kind." For example, horses, zebras, and donkeys are all members of the same "kind," but they are different species.
* The main thing that distinguishes each "kind" as a separate group is that members of that group can reproduce more of their same "kind." Members of different kinds cannot do that with each other.

#### Picture showing Kinds:

<a href="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png"><img src="https://content.bibletranslationtools.org/WycliffeAssociates/en\_tw/raw/branch/master/PNGs/k/Kinds.png" ></a>

#### Translation Suggestions

* Ways to translate this term could include "type" or "class" or "group" or "animal (plant) group" or "category."

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 01:21
* Genesis 01:24
* Mark 09:29
* Matthew 13:47

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2178, H4327, G1085

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kind, kinds

### king

#### Related Ideas:

kingly, kingship

#### Definition:

The term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

* A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
* When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
* In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
* Rarely the term "king" was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as "King Herod" in the New Testament.
* In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
* The "kingdom of God" refers to God's rule over his people.
* Jesus was called "king of the Jews," "king of Israel," and "king of kings."
* When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
* This term could also be translated as "supreme chief" or "absolute leader" or "sovereign ruler."
* The phrase "king of kings" could be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [Herod Antipas](../names/herodantipas.md), [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 06:15-16
* 2 Kings 05:18
* 2 Samuel 05:03
* Acts 07:9-10
* Acts 13:22
* John 01:49-51
* Luke 01:05
* Luke 22:24-25
* Matthew 05:35
* Matthew 14:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936, G937

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

king, king's, kingly, kings, kingship, made ... king, set up ... king, set up kings

### kingdom

#### Related Ideas:

power to rule

#### Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

* A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
* The term "kingdom" can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term "kingdom of God."
* God is the ruler of all creation, but the term "kingdom of God" especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
* The Bible also talks about Satan having a "kingdom" in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as "darkness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term "kingdom" could be translated as "country (ruled by a king)" or "king's territory" or "region ruled by a king."
* In a spiritual sense, "kingdom" could be translated as "ruling" or "reigning" or "controlling" or "governing."
* One way to translate "kingdom of priests" might be "spiritual priests who are ruled by God."
* The phrase "kingdom of light" could be translated as "God's reign that is good like light" or "when God, who is light, rules people" or "the light and goodness of God's kingdom." It is best to keep the word "light" in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
* Note that the term "kingdom" is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: [authority](../kt/authority.md), [king](../other/king.md), [kingdom of God](../kt/kingdomofgod.md), [kingdom of Israel](../names/kingdomofisrael.md), [Judah](../names/judah.md), [Judah](../names/kingdomofjudah.md), [priest](../kt/priest.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:12
* 2 Timothy 04:17-18
* Colossians 01:13-14
* John 18:36
* Mark 03:24
* Matthew 04:7-9
* Matthew 13:19
* Matthew 16:28
* Revelation 01:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kingdom, kingdoms, power to rule, kingship

### know

#### Related Ideas:

knowledge, make known, unknowingly, unknown

#### Definition:

To "know" means to understand something or to be aware of a fact. The expression "make known" is an expression that means to tell information.

* The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing things in both the physical and spiritual worlds.
* To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
* To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
* To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
* To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
* Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
* The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."
* If a person does something "unknowingly," he does it without knowing that he is doing it.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
* Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
* The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
* To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
* The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
* The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.
* To "train for" an activity is to learn now to do it well. To train for war is to learn by practice how to be a good fighter.

(See also: [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [reveal](../kt/reveal.md), [understand](../other/understand.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
* 1 Samuel 17:46
* 2 Corinthians 02:15
* 2 Peter 01:3-4
* Deuteronomy 04:39-40
* Genesis 19:05
* Luke 01:77

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H2713, H2372, H3045, H3046, H3925, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1834, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G5319, G2589, G2657, G4267, G4894, G5318

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

knew, know, know ... beforehand, knowing, knowledge, known, knows, made ... known, made known, make ... known, makes known, unknowingly, unknown

### labor

#### Related Ideas:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, laborer, occupation, strive, struggle, toil

#### Definition:

The term "labor" refers to doing physical work of any kind.

* In general, labor is any task which uses energy. It is often implied that the task is difficult.
* A laborer is a person who does any type of labor.
* In English, the word "labor" is also used for part of the process of giving birth. Other languages may have a completely different word for this.
* Ways to translate "labor" could include "work" or "hard work" or "difficult work" or to "work hard."
* "Toil" is hard, unpleasant work, and to "toil" is to do hard, unpleasant work.
* An "occupation" is the work or labor that a person does to obtain food, clothing, shelter, and the other things he needs to live.
* Sometimes "strive" and "struggle" mean to work very hard to do something.

(See also: [hard](../other/hard.md), [labor pains](../other/laborpains.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:09
* 1 Thessalonians 03:05
* Galatians 04:10-11
* James 05:04
* John 04:38
* Luke 10:02
* Matthew 10:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3018, H3021, H3022, H3205, H4522, H4639, H5447, H5450, H5647, H5656, H5998, H5999, H6001, H6089, H6468, H8104, G75, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G2872, G2873, G3449, G4866, G4904

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fellow laborers, forced labor, hard labor, hard-working, labor, labored, laborer, laborer's, laborers, laboring, labors, occupation, product of ... labor, products of ... labor, strive, strives, striving together, struggle, toil, toiled, toiling, toils

### last day

#### Related Ideas:

last times, latter days

#### Definition:

The term "last days" or "latter days" refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

* This time period will have an unknown duration.
* The "last days" are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "last days" can also be translated as "final days" or "end times."
* In some contexts, this could be translated as "end of the world" or "when this world ends."

(See also: [day of the Lord](../kt/dayofthelord.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [turn](../other/turn.md), [world](../kt/world.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 03:3-4
* Daniel 10:14-15
* Hebrews 01:02
* Isaiah 02:02
* James 05:03
* Jeremiah 23:19-20
* John 11:24-26
* Micah 04:1

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

last day, last days, last times, latter days

### life

#### Related Ideas:

alive, come to life, conduct, exist, fresh, life-giving, lifetime, live, revive, survive, survivor

#### Definition:

All these terms refer to being physically alive, not dead. They are also used figuratively to refer to being alive spiritually. The following discusses what is meant by "physical life" and "spiritual life."

#### 1. Physical life

* Physical life is the presence of the spirit in the body. God breathed life into Adam's body, and he became a living being.
* A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
* Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
* It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
* The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
* In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."
* To "revive" is for someone who is dead or almost dead to live again, or to take something or someone who is dead or almost dead and make him live again.
* A person who "survives" has almost died for some reason but is still alive.
* The same Hebrew words can be translated "fresh" water or "living" water.
* Things that are "lifeless" either have never been alive or were once alive but are now dead.
* The way a person "conducts" himself or his life is the way he lives his life, most importantly the morally good or bad things he does.

#### 2. Spiritual life

* A person has spiritual life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
* This life is also called "eternal life" to indicate that it does not end.
* The opposite of spiritual life is spiritual death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
* Depending on the context, the term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
* The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
* The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
* The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
* Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally." The word "life-giving" can be translated as "something that causes to live" or "something that gives life."

(See also: [death](../other/death.md), [everlasting](../kt/eternity.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Peter 01:03
* Acts 10:42
* Genesis 02:07
* Genesis 07:22
* Hebrews 10:20
* Jeremiah 44:02
* John 01:04
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 12:23
* Matthew 07:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2416, H2417, H2418, H2421, H2425, H2465, H2673, H3351, H3824, H3885, H4241, H5315, H5397, H5564, H6106, H7611, H8141, H8300, G326, G386, G390, G895, G979, G980, G981, G982, G1127, G1236, G1514, G2198, G2222, G2225, G2227, G2450, G3118, G4176, G4684, G4748, G4763, G4800, G4806, G5171, G5225, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

alive, come to life, conduct, conducted, existed, fresh, keep ... alive, life, life-giving, lifeless, lifetime, live, lived, lives, living, revive, revived, survive, survived, survivor, survivors

### light

#### Related Ideas:

bright, brightness, enlighten, shine

#### Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term "light" in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth.

* Jesus said, "I am the light of the world" to express that he brings God's true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
* Christians are commanded to "walk in the light," which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
* The apostle John stated that "God is light" and in him there is no darkness at all.
* Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
* Jesus said that he was "the light of the world" and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
* "Walking in the light" represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms "light" and "darkness" even when they are used figuratively.
* It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, "walk as children of light" could be translated as, "live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight."
* Make sure that the translation of "light" does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](../other/darkness.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 01:07
* 1 John 02:08
* 2 Corinthians 04:06
* Acts 26:18
* Isaiah 02:05
* John 01:05
* Matthew 05:16
* Matthew 06:23
* Nehemiah 09:12-13
* Revelation 18:23-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, G681, G796, G1391, G1645, G2985, G2986, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

bright, brightness, enlighten, enlightened, light, lighting, lights, shining

### like

#### Related Ideas:

according to, alike, as, as if, compare, in the same way, just as, liken, likeness, likewise, resemble, similar, similarly, unlike

#### Definition:

The terms "like" and "likeness" refer to something being the same as, or similar to, something else.

* To "compare" two things is to look at how they are the same or how they are different.
* The word "like" is also often used in a figurative expressions called a "simile" in which something is compared to something else, usually highlighting a shared characteristic. For example, "his clothes shined like the sun" and "the voice boomed like thunder."
* To "be like" or "sound like" or "look like" something or someone means to have qualities that are similar to the thing or person being compared to.
* People were created in God's "likeness," that is, in his "image." It means that they have qualities or characteristics that are "like" or "similar to" qualities that God has, such as the ability to think, feel, and communicate.
* To have "the likeness of" something or someone means to have characteristics that look like that thing or person.
* The word "likewise" means "in the same way," referring to something that the speaker has just said.
* The word "unlike" means "not like."

#### Translation Suggestions

* In some contexts, the expression "the likeness of" could be translated as "what looked like" or "what appeared to be."
* The expression "in the likeness of his death" could be translated as "sharing in the experience of his death" or "as if experiencing his death with him."
* The expression "in the likeness of sinful flesh" could be translated as "being like a sinful human being" or to "be a human being." Make sure the translation of this expression does not sound like Jesus was sinful.
* "In his own likeness" could also be translated as to "be like him" or "having many of the same qualities that he has."
* The expression "the likeness of an image of perishable man, of birds, of four-footed beasts and of creeping things" could be translated as "idols made to look like perishable humans, or animals, such as birds, beasts, and small, crawling things."

(See also: [beast](../other/beast.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [image of God](../kt/imageofgod.md), [image](../other/image.md), [perish](../kt/perish.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ezekiel 01:05
* Mark 08:24
* Matthew 17:02
* Matthew 18:03
* Psalms 073:05
* Revelation 01:12-13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1819, H1823, H3644, H4915, H7737, H8403, H8544, G1503, G1504, G2509, G2531, G3664, G3665, G3666, G3667, G3668, G3669, G3697, G4793, G4833, G5108, G5615, G5616, G5618, G5619

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

according to, alike, as, as if, be ... like, become ... like, compare, in the same way, is ... like, just as, like, liken, likeness, likenesses, likewise, resemble, resembled, similar to, similarly, the same, the same way, unlike

### lion

#### Related Ideas:

lioness

#### Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

* Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
* Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
* Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
* When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
* Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.
* A "lioness" is a female lion.

(See also: [David](../names/david.md), [leopard](../other/leopard.md), [Samson](../names/samson.md), [sheep](../other/sheep.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
* 1 Kings 07:29
* Proverbs 19:12
* Psalms 017:12
* Revelation 05:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H738, H739, H744, H3715, H3833, H3918, H7826, H7830, G3023

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lion, lion's, lioness, lionesses, lions, lions'

### love

#### Related Ideas:

brotherly love

#### Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on having good things happen to others even when those good things do not happen to the one who loves. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
* Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
* When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
* In the ULB, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
1. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
* This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
* The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

In the figurative expression "Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated," the term "loved" refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as "chosen." Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term "hated" is used figuratively here to mean "rejected" or "not chosen."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
* Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
* Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
* In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
* Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
* Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [death](../other/death.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md), [save](../kt/save.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 13:07
* 1 John 03:02
* 1 Thessalonians 04:10
* Galatians 05:23
* Genesis 29:18
* Isaiah 56:06
* Jeremiah 02:02
* John 03:16
* Matthew 10:37
* Nehemiah 09:32-34
* Philippians 01:09
* Song of Solomon 01:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H1730, H2245, H2532, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5383, G5388

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

brotherly love, love, loved, loves, loving

### lover

#### Definition:

The term "lover" literally means "person who loves."

* Usually "lover" refers to people who are in a sexual relationship with each other.
* In the Old Testament book Song of Songs, the term "lover" is used in a positive way.
* In other parts of the Bible, it often refers to a person who is involved in a sexual relationship with someone he or she is not married to.
* This wrong sexual relationship is often used in the Bible to refer to Israel's disobedience to God in worshiping idols. So the term "lovers" is also used in a figurative way to refer to the idols that the people of Israel worshiped. In these contexts, this term could possibly be translated by "immoral partners" or "partners in adultery" or "idols."

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [love](../kt/love.md))

#### Bible References:

* Hosea 02:05
* Jeremiah 03:02
* Lamentations 01:02
* Luke 16:14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H157, H158, H868, H5689, H7453, H8566

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

lover, lovers

### lust

#### Related Ideas:

crave, desire, lustful, lusting, passion, sensual, sensuality

#### Definition:

Lust is a very strong desire, usually for something sinful or immoral. To lust is to have lust.

* In the Bible, "lust" usually referred to sexual desire for someone other than one's own spouse.
* Sometimes this term was used in a figurative sense to refer to worshiping idols.
* Depending on the context, "lust" could be translated as "wrong desire" or "strong desire" or "wrongful sexual desire" or "strong immoral desire" or to "strongly desire to sin."
* The phrase to "lust after" could be translated as to "wrongly desire" or to "think immorally about" or to "immorally desire."
* To "crave" is to desire strongly.
* "Sensuality" is the desire to satisfy sensual desires, to experience sensual pleasures, particularly sexual pleasure.

(See also: [adultery](../kt/adultery.md), [false god](../kt/falsegod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:16
* 2 Timothy 02:22
* Galatians 05:16
* Galatians 05:19-21
* Genesis 39:7-9
* Matthew 05:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H183, H185, H1730, H2181, H2183, H2530, H2532, H2656, H5178, H5315, H5375, H5689, H5691, H5869, H7843, G766, G1014, G1937, G1939, G3713, G3715, G3806

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

crave, craves, desirable, desire, desired, desires, lust, lusted, lustful, lusting, lusts, passion, sensual, sensuality

### man of God

#### Facts:

The expression "man of God" is a respectful way of referring to a prophet of Yahweh. It is also used to refer to an angel of Yahweh.

* When referring to a prophet, this could also be translated as "man who belongs to God" or "man whom God has chosen" or "man who serves God."
* When referring to an angel this could also be translated as "messenger of God" or "your angel" or "heavenly being from God who looks like a man."

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [honor](../kt/honor.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
* 1 Kings 12:22
* 1 Samuel 09:9-11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H376, H430, G444, G2316

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

man of God

### member

#### Definition:

The term "member" refers to one part of a complex body or group.

* The New Testament describes Christians as "members" of the body of Christ. Believers in Christ belong to a group that is made up of many members.
* Jesus Christ is the "head" of the body and individual believers function as the members of the body. The Holy Spirit gives each member of the body a special role to help the entire body to function well.
* Individuals who participate in groups such as the Jewish Council and the Pharisees are also called "members" of these groups.

(See also: [body](../kt/body.md), [Pharisee](../kt/pharisee.md), [council](../other/council.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 06:15
* 1 Corinthians 12:14-17
* Numbers 16:02
* Romans 12:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1004, H1121, H3338, H5315, G1010, G3196, G3609

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

member, members

### mercy

#### Related Ideas:

kindness, merciful, spare

#### Definition:

The terms "mercy" and "merciful" refer to helping people who are in need, especially when they are in a lowly or humbled condition.

* The term "mercy" can also include the meaning of not punishing people for something they have done wrong.
* A powerful person such as a king is described as "merciful" when he treats people kindly instead of harming them.
* To "be merciful" or "spare" someone who has done wrong to another means to forgive that person.
* An evil person who "spares" those who have done nothing wrong does not do the same wrong to them that he has done to others.
* We show mercy when we help people who are in great need.
* God is merciful to us, and he wants us to be merciful to others.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "mercy" could be translated as "kindness" or "compassion" or "pity."
* The term "merciful" could be translated as "showing pity" or "being kind to" or "forgiving."
* To "show mercy to" or "have mercy on" could be translated as "treat kindly" or "be compassionate toward."

(See also: [compassion](../kt/compassion.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 01:3-5
* 1 Timothy 01:13
* Daniel 09:17
* Exodus 34:06
* Genesis 19:16
* Hebrews 10:28-29
* James 02:13
* Luke 06:35-36
* Matthew 09:27
* Philippians 02:25-27
* Psalms 041:4-6
* Romans 12:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2550, H2551, H2603, H2604, H2617, H3722, H7349, H7355, H7356, H7359, H8467, G1653, G1655, G1656, G2433, G2436, G3628, G3629, G4698, G5363, G5544

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

kindness, mercies, merciful, mercy, spare, spared, spares, tender mercy

### mind

#### Related Ideas:

expect, intention, likeminded, mindful, sober, think

#### Definition:

The term "mind" refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

* The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
* To "have the mind of Christ" means to think and act as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
* To "change his mind" means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.
* To "expect" something is to think that it will happen.
* To "think" can mean to use one's mind to form ideas.
* To "think" can also mean to have a belief or opinion about something.
* To "intend" or "have an intention" to do something is to decide or to plan to do that thing. That thing may be good or evil, and the person may or may not want to do it, but he plans to do it.
* A person who is "sober" is able to think clearly, especially in contrast to a person who has harmed his mind by drinking to much wine.

#### Translation Suggestions

* The term "mind" could also be translated as "thoughts" or "reasoning" or "thinking" or "understanding."
* The expression "keep in mind" could be translated as "remember" or "pay attention to this" or "be sure to know this."
* The expression "heart, soul, and mind" could also be translated as "what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about."
* The expression "call to mind" could be translated as "remember" or "think about."
* The expression "double-minded" could also be translated as "doubting" or "unable to decide" or "with conflicting thoughts."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [heart](../kt/heart.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md))

#### Bible References:

* Luke 10:27
* Mark 06:51-52
* Matthew 21:29
* Matthew 22:37
* James 04:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H226, H1079, G1380, H1843, H3629, H3820, H3824, H3825, H4093, H4150, H5162, H6419, H6725, H6734, H7217, H7725, G364, G1271, G1374, G1839, G2233, G2657, G3328, G3525, G3539, G3540, G3563, G4102, G4993, G5280, G5426, G5427, G5590

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

expect, expected, intention, likeminded, mind, minded, mindful, minds, sober, think, think carefully about, thinks, thought, thoughts

### name

#### Related Ideas:

fame, nameless, notorious, reputation

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the word "name" was used in several figurative ways.

* In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
* The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
* Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
* The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved."
* People who are "nameless" are unimportant, so few people know about them or care about them.
* A person who is "notorious" is one who has a reputation for evil or foolishness.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
* Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
* The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
* The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
* The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
* The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](../kt/call.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:12
* 2 Timothy 02:19
* Acts 04:07
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 09:27
* Genesis 12:02
* Genesis 35:10
* Matthew 18:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5344, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2028, G2564, G3140, G3141, G3686, G3687, G5122

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

fame, name, name's, named, nameless, names, notorious, reputation

### oak

#### Related Ideas:

terebinth

#### Definition:

An oak, or oak tree, is a tall shade tree with a large trunk and wide spreading branches.

* Oak trees have strong, hard wood that was used to build ships and to make farming plows, oxen yokes and walking sticks.
* The seed of an oak tree is called an acorn.
* The trunks of certain oak trees could bemeasured up to 6 meters around.
* Oak trees were symbolic of long life and had other spiritual meanings. In the Bible, they were often associated with holy places.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Many translations will find it important to use the term "oak tree" rather than just the word "oak."
* If oak trees are not known in the receptor area, "an oak" could be translated as "an oak, which is a large shade tree like…," then give the name of a local tree that has similar characteristics.
* See:

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Samuel 10:3-4
* Genesis 13:18
* Genesis 14:13-14
* Genesis 35:4-5
* Judges 06:11-12

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H352, H424, H427, H436, H437, H438

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

oak, oaks, terebinths

### patient

#### Related Ideas:

impatient, patience

#### Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

* When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
* The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
* Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.
* The term "impatient" means not patient.

(See also: [endure](../other/endure.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:20
* 2 Peter 03:8-9
* Hebrews 06:11-12
* Matthew 18:28-29
* Psalms 037:7
* Revelation 02:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3803, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

impatient, patience, patient, patiently

### peace

#### Related Ideas:

peaceable, peaceful, peacemaker, quiet

#### Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

* "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
* To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
* A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
* To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
* A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
* The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
* The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.
* A person who is "peaceable" acts in a way that enables him to live in peace with other people. He acts "peaceably."
* To "quiet" someone is to get them to be at peace. To quiet a quarrel is to get the people to stop quarreling and be at peace with each other.

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
* Acts 07:26
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Colossians 03:15
* Galatians 05:23
* Luke 07:50
* Luke 12:51
* Mark 04:39
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 10:13

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, H8535, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

peace, peaceable, peaceably, peaceful, peacefully, peacemakers, quiet, quiets

### persecute

#### Related Ideas:

persecution, persecutor

#### Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

* Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
* The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
* People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
* The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
* After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
* Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment."

(See also: [Christian](../kt/christian.md), [church](../kt/church.md), [oppress](../other/oppress.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 07:52
* Acts 13:50
* Galatians 01:13-14
* John 05:16-18
* Mark 10:30
* Matthew 05:10
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 10:22
* Matthew 13:20-21
* Philippians 03:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

persecute, persecuted, persecuting, persecution, persecutions, persecutor, persecutors

### power

#### Related Ideas:

ability, able, mastered, can, capable, could, impossible, incapable, powerful, won, unable

#### Definition:

The term "power" refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. "Powers" refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

* The "power of God" refers to God's ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
* God has complete power over everything that he has created.
* God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
* Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "power" could also be translated as "ability" or "strength" or "energy" or "ability to do miracles" or "control."
* Possible ways to translate the term "powers" could include "powerful beings" or "controlling spirits" or "those who control others."
* An expression like "save us from the power of our enemies" could be translated as "save us from being oppressed by our enemies" or "rescue us from being controlled by our enemies." In this case, "power" has the meaning of using one's strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 01:05
* Colossians 01:11-12
* Genesis 31:29
* Jeremiah 18:21
* Jude 01:25
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 01:17
* Luke 04:14
* Matthew 26:64
* Philippians 03:21
* Psalm 080:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H410, H1368, H1369, H1370, H2220, H2393, H2428, H2632, H3027, H3201, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5807, H6109, H6184, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8592, H8633, G1410, G1411, G1415, G1743, G1754, G1832, G1849, G1850, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2904, G3168

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ability, able, am ... able, are ... able, are ... possible, be ... unable, be able, be mastered, can, cannot, capable, could, could not, impossible, incapable, is ... able, may ... be able, miraculous powers, possible, power, powerful, powerfully, powers, was ... able, were ... able, will ... be able, won

### pray

#### Related Ideas:

prayer

#### Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

* People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
* Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
* Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
* People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
* Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
* Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
* This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [praise](../other/praise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 03:09
* Acts 08:24
* Acts 14:26
* Colossians 04:04
* John 17:09
* Luke 11:1
* Matthew 05:43-45
* Matthew 14:22-24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H577, H1156, H2470, H3908, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7879, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

heard ... prayer, pray, prayed, prayer, prayers, praying, prays, urgently pray

### prison

#### Related Ideas:

custody, dungeon, imprison, imprisonment, prisoner

#### Definition:

The term "prison" refers to a place where criminals are kept as a punishment for their crimes. A "prisoner" is someone who has been put in the prison.

* The term "prisoners" can also refer in general to people who have been captured by an enemy and kept somewhere against their will.
* The term "imprisoned" means "kept in a prison" or "kept in captivity."
* Many prophets and other servants of God were put in prison even though they had not done anything wrong.
* To "hold someone in custody" is to put him in a prison or other place from which he cannot escape. Sometimes people were held in custody while they waited to be judged in a trial.
* A "dungeon" is an underground prison that is dark and damp.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Another word for "prison" is "jail."
* The term "prison" could also be translated as "dungeon" in contexts where the prison is probably underground or beneath the main part of a palace or other building.
* The term "prisoners" can also be translated as "captives." Other ways to translate "imprisoned" could be "kept as a prisoner" or "kept in captivity" or "held captive" or "shut up."

(See also: [captive](../other/captive.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 25:04
* Ephesians 04:01
* Luke 12:58
* Luke 22:33-34
* Mark 06:17
* Matthew 05:26
* Matthew 14:03
* Matthew 25:34-36

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H612, H613, H615, H616, H631, H953, H1004, H1540, H3608, H3628, H3947, H4115, H4307, H4455, H4525, H5470, H6495, H7617, H7622, H7628, G1198, G1199, G1200, G1201, G1202, G1210, G2252, G3612, G4788, G4869, G5084, G5438, G5439

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

custody, dungeon, held ... in custody, hold ... in custody, holding ... in custody, imprison, imprisoned, imprisonment, imprisonments, imprisons, prison, prisoner, prisoners, prisons

### profane

#### Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

* A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
* The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
* God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
* Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: [defile](../other/defile.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [clean](../kt/clean.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:16-18
* Ezekiel 20:09
* Malachi 01:10-12
* Matthew 12:05
* Numbers 18:30-32

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profane, profaned, profaning

### profit

#### Related Ideas:

profitable, unprofitable

#### Definition:

In general, the terms "profit" and "profitable" refer to gaining something good through doing certain actions or behaviors.

Something is "profitable" to someone if it brings them good things or if it helps them bring about good things for other people.

* More specifically, the term "profit" often refers to money that is gained from doing business. A business is "profitable" if it gains more money than it spends.
* Actions are profitable if they bring about good things for people.
* 2 Timothy 3:16 says that all Scripture is "profitable" for correcting and training people in righteousness. This means that the Bible's teachings are helpful and useful for teaching people to live according to God's will.

The term "unprofitable" means to not be useful.

* It literally means to not profit anything or to not help someone gain anything.
* Something that is unprofitable is not worth doing because it does not give any benefit.
* This could be translated as "useless" or "worthless" or "not useful" or "unworthy" or "not beneficial" or "giving no benefit."

To "take advantage of" someone is to make extra profit from him because he is weak and unable to demand greater return.

(See also: [worthy](../kt/worthy.md))

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, the term "profit" could also be translated as "benefit" or "help" or "gain."
* The term "profitable" could be translated as "useful" or "beneficial" or "helpful."
* To "profit from" something could be translated as "benefit from" or "gain money from" or "receive help from."
* In the context of a business, "profit" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "money gained" or "surplus of money" or "extra money."

#### Bible References:

* Job 15:03
* Proverbs 10:16
* Jeremiah 02:08
* Ezekiel 18:12-13
* John 06:63
* Mark 08:36
* Matthew 16:26
* 2 Peter 02:1-3

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1214, H3148, H3276, H3504, H4195, H4768, H5532, H7939, H7965, G147, G512, G890, G1281, G2108, G2585, G2770, G2771, G3408, G3685, G4122, G4297, G4851, G5622, G5623

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

profit, profitable, profits, treated ... violently for profit, unprofitable

### promise

#### Related Ideas:

binding promise

#### Definition:

A promise is a pledge to do a certain thing. When someone promises something, it means he is committing to do something.

* The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
* Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.
* A promise is often accompanied by an oath to confirm that it will be done.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "promise" could be translated as "commitment" or "assurance" or "guarantee."
* To "promise to do something" could be translated as "assure someone that you will do something" or "commit to doing something."

(See also: [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [oath](../other/oath.md), [vow](../kt/vow.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 03:15-16
* Genesis 25:31-34
* Hebrews 11:09
* James 01:12
* Numbers 30:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H562, H632, H1696, H2778, H3709, G1860, G1861, G1862, G3670, G4279

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

makes binding promises, promise, promised, promises

### proud

#### Related Ideas:

pride, prideful

#### Definition:

The terms "proud" and "prideful" refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

* A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
* Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
* The terms "proud" and "pride" can also be used in a positive sense, such as being "proud of" what someone else has achieved and being "proud of" your children. The expression "take pride in your work" means to find joy in doing your work well.
* Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of "pride."
* The term "prideful" is always negative, with the meaning of being "arrogant" or "conceited" or "self-important."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The noun "pride" could be translated as "arrogance" or "conceit" or "self-importance."
* In other contexts, "pride" could be translated as "joy" or "satisfaction" or "pleasure."
* To be "proud of" could also be translated as "happy with" or "satisfied with" or "joyful about (the accomplishments of)."
* The phrase "take pride in your work" could be translated as, "find satisfaction in doing your work well."
* The expression "take pride in Yahweh" could also be translated as "be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done" or "be happy about how amazing Yahweh is."

(See also: [arrogant](../other/arrogant.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [joy](../other/joy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 03:6-7
* 2 Corinthians 01:12
* Galatians 06:3-5
* Isaiah 13:19
* Luke 01:51

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

pride, prideful, proud, proudly, source of pride

### raise

#### Related Ideas:

arise, rise, risen

#### Definition:

**raise, raise up**

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

* The figurative phrase "raise up" means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to restore or rebuild.
* "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
* Sometimes "raise up" means to exalt someone or something or make someone or something truly great.

**rise, arise**

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

* When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
* If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
* Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"
* A person who suddenly becomes important is said to "arise."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
* To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
* To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
* The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
* Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
* The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
* Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: [resurrection](../kt/resurrection.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md), [exalt](../kt/exalt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 06:41
* 2 Samuel 07:12
* Acts 10:40
* Colossians 03:01
* Deuteronomy 13:1-3
* Jeremiah 06:01
* Judges 02:18
* Luke 07:22
* Matthew 20:19

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1804, H2210, H2224, H5375, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1127, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, G5312

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arise, arisen, arises, raise, raise up, raised, raises, raising, raising up, rise, rise up, risen, rises, rising, rose

### rebuke

#### Related Ideas:

correct, correction

#### Definition:

To rebuke is to give someone a stern verbal correction, often in order to help that person turn away from sin. Such a correction is a rebuke.

* A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
* The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
* The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
* The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
* "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also [admonish](../other/admonish.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md))

#### Bible References:

* Mark 01:23-26
* Mark 16:14
* Matthew 08:26-27
* Matthew 17:17-18

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H3256, H4045, H4148, H7626, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

correct, corrected, correction, corrections, corrects, give correction, rebuke, rebuked, rebukes

### receive

#### Related Ideas:

abstain, receiver

#### Definition:

The term "receive" generally means to get or accept something that is given, offered, or presented.

* To "receive" can also mean to suffer or experience something, as in "he received punishment for what he did."
* There is also a special sense in which we can "receive" a person. For example, to "receive" guests or visitors means to welcome them and treat them with honor in order to build a relationship with them.
* To "receive the gift of the Holy Spirit" means we are given the Holy Spirit and welcome him to work in and through our lives.
* To "receive Jesus" means to accept God's offer of salvation through Jesus Christ.
* When a blind person "receives his sight" means that God has healed him and enabled him to see.
* The word "abstain" means to refuse to take or receive or have something.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "receive" could be translated as "accept" or "welcome" or "experience" or "be given."
* The expression "you will receive power" could be translated as "you will be given power" or "God will give you power" or "power will be given to you (by God)" or "God will cause the Holy Spirit to work powerfully in you."
* The phrase "received his sight" could be translated as "was able to see" or "became able to see again."

(See also: [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [Jesus](../kt/jesus.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 05:09
* 1 Thessalonians 01:06
* 1 Thessalonians 04:01
* Acts 08:15
* Jeremiah 32:33
* Luke 09:05
* Malachi 03:10-12
* Psalms 049:14-15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3557, H3925, H3947, H5144, H6901, H6902, H8254, G308, G324, G353, G354, G568, G588, G618, G1183, G1184, G1209, G1523, G1653, G1926, G2865, G2983, G3028, G3335, G3336, G3549, G3858, G3880, G4047, G4327, G4355, G4356, G4687, G5264, G5562

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

abstain, receive, receive back, received, received ... in full, receiver, receives, receiving

### reconcile

#### Related Ideas:

reconciliation

#### Definition:

The term "reconcile" refers to "making peace" between people who were formerly enemies of each other. "Reconciliation" is that act of making peace

* In the Bible, this term usually refers to God reconciling people to himself through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus Christ.
* Because of sin, all human beings are God's enemies. But because of his compassionate love, God provided a way for people to be reconciled to him through Jesus.
* Through trusting in Jesus' sacrifice as payment for their sin, people can be forgiven and have peace with God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "reconcile" could be translated as "make peace" or "restore good relations" or "cause to be friends."
* The term "reconciliation" could be translated as "restoring good relations" or "making peace" or "causing peaceful relating."

(See also: [peace](../other/peace.md), [sacrifice](../other/sacrifice.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Corinthians 05:19
* Colossians 01:18-20
* Matthew 05:24
* Proverbs 13:17-18
* Romans 05:10

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G525, G604, G1259, G2643, G2644

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reconcile, reconciled, reconciles, reconciliation, reconciling

### reign

#### Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

* The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
* God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
* When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
* This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: [kingdom](../other/kingdom.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 02:11-13
* Genesis 36:34-36
* Luke 01:30-33
* Luke 19:26-27
* Matthew 02:22-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, G936, G2231, G4821

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reign, reigned, reigning, reigns, set ... to reign

### reject

#### Related Ideas:

deny, despise, refuse, rejection, scorn, set aside, stay away from, throw away

#### Definition:

To "reject" someone or something means to refuse to accept that person or thing. The term "reject" can also mean to "refuse to believe in" something. To reject God or his laws means to refuse to obey him.

* To "deny" what someone says is to say that it is not true.
* To "deny" someone is to say that one does not associate with that person.
* To "despise" or "scorn" people or things is to have no respect for them.
* An "object of scorn" is someone or something that people have no respect for.

#### Translation Suggestions

* Depending on the context, the term "reject" could also be translated by "not accept" or "stop helping" or "refuse to obey" or "stop obeying."
* In some languages the idea of "reject" is expressed as "push away" or "set aside" or "stay away from."
* In the expression "stone that the builders rejected," the term "rejected" could be translated as "refused to use" or "did not accept" or "threw away" or "got rid of as worthless."
* In the context of people who rejected God's commandments, rejected could be translated as "refused to obey" his commands or "stubbornly chose to not accept" God's laws.

(See also: [command](../kt/command.md), [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [stiff-necked](../other/stiffnecked.md))

#### Bible References:

* Galatians 04:12-14
* Hosea 04:6-7
* Isaiah 41:09
* John 12:48-50
* Mark 07:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H936, H937, H947, H959, H2151, H2186, H2778, H2781, H3988, H5006, H5034, H5186, H5203, H5307, H5541, H5800, G114, G483, G550, G579, G580, G581, G593, G683, G720, G1609, G1848, G3868

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

denied, denies, deny, despise, despised, despises, refuse, refused, reject, rejected, rejecting, rejection, rejects, scorn, scorns, set ... aside, sets ... aside, stay away from, throw away, tossed aside

### repent

#### Related Ideas:

change his mind, hold back, regret, relent, repentance

#### Definition:

The terms "repent" and "repentance" refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

* To "repent" literally means to "change one's mind."
* In the Bible, "repent" usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God's way of thinking and acting.
* When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.
* A person who "relents" decides not to punish another person.
* A person who "regrets" having done something wishes he had never done that thing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "repent" can be translated with a word or phrase that means "turn back (to God)" or "turn away from sin and toward God" or "turn toward God, away from sin."
* Often the term "repentance" can be translated using the verb "repent." For example, "God has given repentance to Israel" could be translated as "God has enabled Israel to repent."
* Other ways to translate "repentance" could include "turning away from sin" or "turning to God and away from sin."

(See also: [forgive](../kt/forgive.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [turn](../other/turn.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 03:19-20
* Luke 03:3
* Luke 03:8
* Luke 05:32
* Luke 24:47
* Mark 01:14-15
* Matthew 03:03
* Matthew 03:11
* Matthew 04:17
* Romans 02:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5162, H8133, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

change ... mind, changed ... mind, hold back, regret, regretted, relent, relented, relenting, repent, repentance, repented, repents

### resurrection

#### Definition:

The term "resurrection" refers to the act of becoming alive again after having died.

* To resurrect someone means to bring that person back to life again. Only God has the power to do this.
* The word "resurrection" often refers to Jesus' coming back to life after he died.
* When Jesus said, "I am the Resurrection and the Life" he meant that he is the source of resurrection, and the one who causes people to come back to life.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* A person's "resurrection" could be translated as his "coming back to life" or his "becoming alive again after being dead."
* The literal meaning of this word is "a rising up" or "the act of being raised (from the dead)." These would be other possible ways to translate this term.

(See also: [life](../kt/life.md), [death](../other/death.md), [raise](../other/raise.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 15:13
* 1 Peter 03:21
* Hebrews 11:35
* John 05:28-29
* Luke 20:27
* Luke 20:36
* Matthew 22:23
* Matthew 22:30
* Philippians 03:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: G386, G1454, G1815

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

resurrection

### reveal

#### Related Ideas:

revelation

#### Definition:

The term "reveal" means to cause something to be known. A "revelation" is something that has been made known.

* God has revealed himself through everything he has created and through his communication with people by spoken and written messages.
* God also reveals himself through dreams or visions.
* When Paul said that he received the gospel by "revelation from Jesus Christ," he means that Jesus himself explained the gospel to him.
* In the New Testament book "Revelation," God revealed events that will happen in the end times. He revealed them to the apostle John through visions.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "reveal" could include "make known" or "disclose" or "show clearly."
* Depending on the context, possible ways to translate "revelation" could be "communication from God" or "things that God has revealed" or "teachings about God." It is best to keep the meaning of "reveal" in the translation.
* The phrase "where there is no revelation" could be translated as "when God is not revealing himself to people" or "when God is not speaking to people" or "among people whom God has not communicating."

(See also: [dream](../other/dream.md), [vision](../other/vision.md))

#### Bible References:

* Daniel 11:1-2
* Ephesians 03:05
* Galatians 01:12
* Lamentations 02:13-14
* Matthew 10:26
* Philippians 03:15
* Revelation 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1540, H1541, H1540, H5046, H7200, G601, G602, G1213, G1453, G3377, G5318, G5319, G5537

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

reveal, revealed, revealing, reveals, revelation, revelations

### righteous

#### Related Ideas:

right, rightly, righteousness, rightful, upright

#### Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

* These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
* Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
* When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" can refer to sin or the condition of being sinful.

* These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
* Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
* Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.
* "Unrighteousness" can be an abstract noun that refers to words or actions that are unrighteous.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

* The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
* A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
* Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness."

#### Translation Suggestions:

When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."

God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."

When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."

The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."

Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good

Sometimes "the righteous" was used figuratively and referred to "people who think they are good" or "people who seem to be righteous."

The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."

The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."

The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."

If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."

Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."

The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."

The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: [evil](../kt/evil.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [good](../kt/good.md), [holy](../kt/holy.md), [integrity](../other/integrity.md), [just](../kt/justice.md), [law](../other/law.md), [law](../kt/lawofmoses.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [pure](../kt/purify.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [unlawful](../other/lawful.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 19:16
* Job 01:08
* Psalms 037:30
* Psalms 049:14
* Psalms 107:42
* Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
* Isaiah 48:1-2
* Ezekiel 33:13
* Malachi 02:06
* Matthew 06:01
* Acts 03:13-14
* Romans 01:29-31
* 1 Corinthians 06:09
* Galatians 03:07
* Colossians 03:25
* 2 Thessalonians 02:10
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* 1 Peter 03:18-20
* 1 John 01:09
* 1 John 05:16-17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H205, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G824, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts rightly, do right, does what is right, in the right, made ... appear ... righteous, right treatment, righteous, righteously, righteousness, rightful, that are right, that is right, unrighteous, unrighteously, unrighteousness, upright, uprightly, uprightness, what is ... right, what was right

### ruin

#### Related Ideas:

rubble, ruins

#### Definition:

To "ruin" something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term "ruin" or "ruins" refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

* The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God's wrath as a "day of ruin" when the world will be judged and punished.
* The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
* Depending on the context, to "ruin" could be translated as to "destroy" or to "spoil" or to "make useless" or to "break."
* The term "ruin" or "ruins" could be translated as "rubble" or "broken-down buildings" or "destroyed city" or "devastation" or "brokenness" or "destruction," depending on the context.

#### Bible References:

* 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
* 2 Kings 19:25-26
* Acts 15:16
* Isaiah 23:13-14

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6, H1091, H1197, H1530, H1820, H1942, H2015, H2034, H2040, H2717, H2719, H2720, H2721, H2723, H2930, H3510, H3765, H3782, H3832, H4072, H4288, H4384, H4654, H4658, H4876, H4889, H5221, H5307, H5327, H5422, H5557, H5754, H5856, H6365, H6561, H7451, H7489, H7582, H7591, H7612, H7701, H7703, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, H8510, G2506, G2647, G2679, G2692, G3089, G3639, G4485

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

allowed to become ruined, rubble, ruin, ruined, ruining, ruins

### save

#### Related Ideas:

make well, preserve, safe, salvation

#### Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

* In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
* In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
* People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

* In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
* The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."

In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."

The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."

The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies)."

"God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."

"You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: [cross](../kt/cross.md), [deliver](../other/deliverer.md), [punish](../other/punish.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [Savior](../kt/savior.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 49:18
* Genesis 47:25-26
* Psalms 080:03
* Jeremiah 16:19-21
* Micah 06:3-5
* Luke 02:30
* Luke 08:36-37
* Acts 04:12
* Acts 28:28
* Acts 02:21
* Romans 01:16
* Romans 10:10
* Ephesians 06:17
* Philippians 01:28
* 1 Timothy 01:15-17
* Revelation 19:1-2

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4581, H4931, H5337, H5338, H5756, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G1295, G1508, G1515, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be made well, brought safely, brought safely through, place of safety, preserve, safe, safely, safety, salvation, save, saved, saves, saving

### self-control

#### Related Ideas:

self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

#### Definition:

Self-control is the ability to control one's behavior in order to avoid sinning.

* It refers to good behavior, that is, avoiding sinful thoughts, speech, and actions.
* Self-control is a fruit or characteristic that the Holy Spirit gives to Christians.
* A person who is using self-control is able to stop himself from doing something wrong that he may want to do. God is the one who enables a person to have self-control.
* "Self-indulgence" is the opposite of self-control. Someone who is full of self-indulgence does whatever he wants.

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 07:8-9
* 2 Peter 01:5-7
* 2 Timothy 03:1-4
* Galatians 05:23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H4623, H7307, G192, G193, G1466, G1467, G1468, G4993, G4997, G4998

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

self-control, self-controlled, self-indulgence, sensible, use good sense

### servant

#### Related Ideas:

assistant, attendant, hired worker, maidservant, office, serve, service

#### Definition:

The word "servant" refers to a person who works for another person, either by choice or by force. Some servants were slaves, and the surrounding text usually makes it clear whether or not a particular servant was a slave. In Bible times, there was less of a difference between a servant and a slave than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of their master's household and many were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

* A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
* In ancient times, some people became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
* In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
* In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
* In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
* Christians are also called "slaves to righteousness," which is a metaphor that compares the commitment to obey God to a slave's commitment to obey his master.

The word "serve" means to do things to help other people. It can also mean to "worship."

* In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
* To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
* People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
* The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.

The word "service" refers to the work that a servant does. It may also refer to worship.

The word "office" refers to the position or job that a servant has.

(See also: [commit](../other/commit.md), [enslave](../other/enslave.md), [household](../other/household.md), [lord](../kt/lord.md), [obey](../other/obey.md), [righteous](../kt/righteous.md), [covenant](../kt/covenant.md), [law](../other/law.md))

#### Bible References

* Acts 04:29-31
* Acts 10:7-8
* Colossians 01:7-8
* Colossians 03:22-25
* Genesis 21:10-11
* Luke 12:47-48
* Mark 09:33-35
* Matthew 10:24-25
* Matthew 13:27-28
* 2 Timothy 02:3-5
* Acts 06:2-4
* Genesis 25:23
* Luke 04:8
* Luke 12:37-38
* Luke 22:26-27
* Mark 08:7-10
* Matthew 04:10-11
* Matthew 06:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H327, H519, H519, H4931, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5656, H5657, H5659, H5673, H6402, H6635, H7916, H8120, H8198, H8278, H8334, H8335, G1199, G1247, G1248, G1249, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2038, G2322, G2324, G2615, G2999, G3000, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3814, G3816, G4342, G5256, G5257

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

female servant, female servants, hired servant, hired servants, hired worker, maidservants, male servant, male servants, office, offices, one who serves, servant, servant girl, servant girls, servant's, servants, servants', serve, served, serves, service, services, serving

### set apart

#### Related Ideas:

distinct, make a distinction, treat differently

#### Definition:

The term "set apart" means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to "set apart" people or things means to make them "set apart." This also means to "treat" them "differently." When something is "distinct," it is different from other things.

* The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
* The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
* A believer who is "set apart" for service to God is "dedicated to" fulfilling God's will.
* One meaning of the term "holy" is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
* To "sanctify" someone means to set apart that person for God's service.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate to "set apart" could include to "specially select" or to "separate from among you" or to "take aside to do a special task."
* To "be set apart" could be translated as "be separated (from)" or "be specially appointed (for)."

(See also: [holy](../kt/holy.md), [sanctify](../kt/sanctify.md), [appoint](../kt/appoint.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ephesians 03:17-19
* Exodus 31:12-15
* Judges 17:12
* Numbers 03:11-13
* Philippians 01:1-2
* Romans 01:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H2764, H4390, H5144, H5674, H6395, H6918, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G40, G2564

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

be distinct, making a distinction, set ... apart, sets ... apart, treat ... differently, treating ... differently

### shame

#### Related Ideas:

ashamed, shameful, shameless, unashamed

#### Definition:

The term "shame" refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

* Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
* The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
* The phrase "put to shame" means to cause someone to feel ashamed. It might be expose their sin or by defeating them.
* The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
* God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person's sin and causing him to be humiliated.
* A person that is "unashamed" does not feel shame.
* A person is "shameless" if he does something shameful but does not feel ashamed.
* A "shameless act" is something a person should feel ashamed about doing, but he does not feel ashamed.

Sometimes the word "shame" is used figuratively to refer to a person's nakedness or private parts.

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [humble](../kt/humble.md), [humiliate](../other/humiliate.md), [Isaiah](../names/isaiah.md), [repent](../kt/repent.md), [sin](../kt/sin.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Peter 03:15-17
* 2 Kings 02:17
* 2 Samuel 13:13
* Luke 20:11
* Mark 08:38
* Mark 12:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H5949, H2616, H2659, H2781, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H7022, H7036, H8103, G149, G152, G153, G422, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3681, G3856, G5195

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ashamed, make ... ashamed, put ... to shame, shame, shamed, shameful, shamefully, shameless, shamelessly, shames, unashamed

### silver

#### Related Ideas:

money

#### Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

* The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
* Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
* In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
* Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
* Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [temple](../kt/temple.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
* 1 Samuel 02:36
* 2 Kings 25:13-15
* Acts 03:06
* Matthew 26:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

money, silver

### sin

#### Related Ideas:

sinful, sinner

#### Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

* Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
* Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
* Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
* A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
* Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
* The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
* To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
* Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
* Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
* The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
* Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
* In expressions like "slaves to sin" or "ruled by sin," the term "sin" could be translated as "disobedience" or "evil desires and actions."
* Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
* The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: [disobey](../other/disobey.md), [evil](../kt/evil.md), [flesh](../kt/flesh.md), [tax collector](../other/tax.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
* 1 John 01:10
* 1 John 02:02
* 2 Samuel 07:12-14
* Acts 03:19
* Daniel 09:24
* Genesis 04:07
* Hebrews 12:02
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 18:23
* Leviticus 04:14
* Luke 15:18
* Matthew 12:31
* Romans 06:23
* Romans 08:04

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H6588, H7683, H7686, G93, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sin, sinful, sinned, sinner, sinners, sinning, sins

### slander

#### Related Ideas:

slanderer, slanderous, speak evil about

#### Definition:

Slander consists of negative, defaming things spoken (not written) about another person. To say such things (not to write them) about someone is to slander that person. The person saying such things is a slanderer.

* Slander may be a true report or a false accusation, but its effect is to cause others to think negatively of the person being slandered.
* To "slander" could be translated as to "speak against" or to "spread an evil report" or to "defame."
* The word "slanderer" could also be translated as "tale-bearer."

(See also: [blasphemy](../kt/blasphemy.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 04:13
* 1 Timothy 03:11
* 2 Corinthians 06:8-10
* Mark 07:20-23

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1681, H1696, H1848, H3960, H5791, H7270, H7400, H8267, G987, G988, G1228, G1426, G2635, G2636, G2637, G3059, G3060

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

slander, slandered, slanderer, slanderers, slandering, slanderous, slanders, speak evil about, spoken of as evil

### son

#### Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

* "Son" was often used figuratively in the Bible to refer to any male descendant, such as a grandson or great-grandson.
* The term "son" can also be used as a polite form of address to a boy or man who is younger than the speaker.
* Sometimes "sons of God" was used in the New Testament to refer to believers in Christ.
* God called Israel his "firstborn son." This refers to God's choosing of the nation of Israel to be his special people. It is through them that God's message of redemption and salvation came, with the result that many other people have become his spiritual children.
* The phrase "son of" often has the figurative meaning "person having the characteristics of." Examples of this include "sons of the light," "sons of disobedience," "a son of peace," and "sons of thunder."
* The phrase "son of" is also used to tell who a person's father is. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
* Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
* When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
* When used to refer to a descendant rather than a direct son, the term "descendant" could be used, as in referring to Jesus as the "descendant of David" or in genealogies where sometimes "son" referred to a male descendant who was not an actual son.
* Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.
* The figurative expression "son of" could also be translated as "someone who has the characteristics of" or "someone who is like" or "someone who has" or "someone who acts like."

(See also: [Azariah](../names/azariah.md), [descendant](../other/descendant.md), [ancestor](../other/father.md), [firstborn](../other/firstborn.md), [Son of God](../kt/sonofgod.md), [sons of God](../kt/sonsofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 18:15
* 1 Kings 13:02
* 1 Thessalonians 05:05
* Galatians 04:07
* Hosea 11:01
* Isaiah 09:06
* Matthew 03:17
* Matthew 05:09
* Matthew 08:12
* Nehemiah 10:28

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1247, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

son, son's, sons

### spirit

#### Related Ideas:

ghost, spiritual

#### Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

* The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
* A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
* In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
* In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
* For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
* God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
* Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
* The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
* Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
* In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
* Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
* The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
* Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
* The figurative expression "spiritual milk" could also be translated as "basic teachings from God" or "God's teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does)."
* The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
* The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: [angel](../kt/angel.md), [demon](../kt/demon.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [soul](../kt/soul.md), [divination](../other/divination.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Corinthians 05:05
* 1 John 04:03
* 1 Thessalonians 05:23
* Acts 05:09
* Colossians 01:09
* Ephesians 04:23
* Genesis 07:21-22
* Isaiah 04:04
* Mark 01:23-26
* Matthew 26:41
* Philippians 01:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H178, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G4861, G5326, G5427

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

ghost, spirit, spirits, spiritual, spiritually

### strength

#### Related Ideas:

strengthen, strong, stronger, strongest

#### Definitions:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

* "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
* A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
* One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
* If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

#### Translation Suggestions

In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."

In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."

The following examples show the meaning of these terms in longer expressions and how they can be translated.

"puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."

"in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."

"will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."

"by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."

"strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."

"I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"

"in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."

"the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"

"with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."

"of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."

"with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [persevere](../other/perseverance.md), [right hand](../kt/righthand.md), [save](../kt/save.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Kings 18:19-21
* 2 Peter 02:11
* Luke 10:27
* Psalm 021:01

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1368, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2389, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4392, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5794, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6099, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8623, H8624, H8631, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1415, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2159, G2478, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

become strong, made ... strong, made ... stronger, make ... strong, makes ... strong, strength, strengthen, strengthened, strengthening, strengthens, strong, stronger, strongest

### suffer

#### Related Ideas:

misery

#### Definition:

The terms "suffer" and "suffering" refer to experiencing something very unpleasant, such as illness, pain, or other hardships.

* When people are persecuted or when they are sick, they suffer.
* Sometimes people suffer because of wrong things they have done; other times they suffer because of sin and disease in the world.
* Suffering can be physical, such as feeling pain or sickness. It can also be emotional, such as feeling fear, sadness, or loneliness.
* 'Misery' is what a person feels when they suffer.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term "suffer" can be translated as "feel pain" or "endure difficulty" or "experience hardships" or "go through difficult and painful experiences."
* Depending on the context, "suffering" could be translated as "extremely difficult circumstances" or "severe hardships" or "experiencing hardship" or "time of painful experiences."
* The phrase "suffer thirst" could be translated as "experience thirst" or "suffer with thirst."
* To "suffer violence" could also be translated as "undergo violence" or "be harmed by violent acts."

#### Bible References:

* 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
* 2 Thessalonians 01:3-5
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* Acts 07:11-13
* Isaiah 53:11
* Jeremiah 06:6-8
* Matthew 16:21
* Psalms 022:24
* Revelation 01:09
* Romans 05:3-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H816, H943, H1741, H1934, H4531, G4912, H5142, H5375, H5999, H6001, H6031, H6040, H6041, H6090, H6770, H6869, H6887, H7489, H7661, G91, G941, G971, G2210, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804, G3958, G4310, G4778, G4777, G4841, G5004

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

miseries, suffer, suffered, suffering, sufferings, suffers

### teach

#### Related Ideas:

educated, teaching, untaught

#### Definition:

To "teach" someone is to tell him something he doesn’t already know. It can also mean to "provide information" in general, with no reference to the person who is learning. Usually the information is given in a formal or systematic way. A person’s "teaching" is or his "teachings" are what he has taught.

* A "teacher" is someone who teaches. The past action of "teach" is "taught."
* When Jesus was teaching, he was explaining things about God and his kingdom.
* Jesus' disciples called him "Teacher" as a respectful form of address for someone who taught people about God.
* The information that is being taught can be shown or spoken.
* The phrase "what you have been taught" could also be translated as, "what these people have taught you" or "what God has taught you," depending on the context.
* Other ways to translate "teach" could include "tell" or "explain" or "instruct."
* Often this term can be translated as "teaching people about God."
* A person who is "educated" has been taught formally.
* A person who is "untaught" has not been taught.
* A "teaching" is the information that someone teaches.

(See also: [instruct](../other/instruct.md), [teacher](../other/teacher.md), [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Timothy 01:03
* Acts 02:40-42
* John 07:14
* Luke 04:31
* Matthew 04:23
* Psalms 032:08

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H502, H995, H2094, H2449, H2596, H3045, H3046, H3256, H3384, H3925, H3948, H7919, H8150, H8451, G1317, G1319, G1321, G1322, G2085, G2605, G2727, G2312, G2567, G3811

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

educated, taught, teach, teaches, teaching, teachings, untaught

### teacher

#### Definition:

A teacher is a person who gives other people new information. Teachers help others to obtain and use both knowledge and skills.

* In the Bible, the word "teacher" is used in a special sense to refer to someone who teaches about God.
* People who learn from a teacher are called "students" or "disciples."
* In some Bible translations, this term is capitalized ("Teacher") when it is used as a title for Jesus.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The usual word for a teacher can be used to translate this term, unless that word is only used for a school teacher.
* Some cultures may have a special title that is used for religious teachers, such as "Sir" or "Rabbi" or "Preacher."

(See also: [disciple](../kt/disciple.md), [preach](../other/preach.md))

#### Bible References:

* Ecclesiastes 01:12-15
* Ephesians 04:11-13
* Galatians 06:6-8
* Habakkuk 02:18
* James 03:02
* John 01:37-39
* Luke 06:40
* Matthew 12:38-40

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H3384, H3887, H3925, G1320, G2567, G3547, G5572

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

teacher, teachers

### tent

#### Related Ideas:

camp, encamp, tentmaker

#### Definition:

A tent is a portable shelter made of sturdy fabric that is draped over a structure of poles and attached to them.

* Tents can be small, with just enough space for a few people to sleep in, or they can be very large, with space for an entire family to sleep, cook, and live in.
* For many people, tents are used as permanent dwelling places. For example, during most of the time that Abraham's family lived in the land of Canaan, they dwelled in large tents constucted from sturdy cloth made of goat hair.
* The Israelites also lived in tents during their forty-year wanderings through the desert of Sinai.
* The tabernacle building was a kind of very large tent, with thick walls made of cloth curtains.
* When the apostle Paul traveled to different cities to share the gospel, he supported himself by making tents.
* The term "tents" is sometimes used figuratively to refer generally to where people live. This could also be translated as "homes" or "dwellings" or "houses" or even "bodies."
* To "camp" is to sleep in tents or other temporary shelters.
* To "encamp" is for an army to set up camp near a place they will attack.

(See also: [Abraham](../names/abraham.md), [Canaan](../names/canaan.md), [curtain](../other/curtain.md), [Paul](../names/paul.md), [Sinai](../names/sinai.md), [tabernacle](../kt/tabernacle.md), [tent of meeting](../other/tentofmeeting.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 05:10
* Daniel 11:45
* Exodus 16:18
* Genesis 12:09

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H167, H168, H2918, H3407, H4908, H6898, G3925, G4633, G4636

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

camp, camped, camping, camps, encamp, encamped, encampments, encamps, tent, tentmakers, tents

### test

#### Related Ideas:

put to the test

#### Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

* God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
* God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
* Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
* To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
* In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
* Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
* Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
* To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
* In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
* In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: [tempt](../kt/tempt.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 04:01
* 1 Thessalonians 05:21
* Acts 15:10
* Genesis 22:01
* Isaiah 07:13
* James 01:12
* Lamentations 03:40-43
* Malachi 03:10
* Philippians 01:10
* Psalm 026:02

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1305, H2713, H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G350, G1252, G1263, G1381, G1382, G1598, G1957, G2983, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G3985, G3986, G4451, G4828

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

put ... to the test, test, tested, testing, tests

### testimony

#### Related Ideas:

eyewitness, testify, witness

#### Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

* Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
* A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
* Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
* In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

* To "witness" something means to see it happen.
* At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
* Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
* A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
* The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Translating "testify" and "testimony":

* The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "tell what happened."
* Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "what has been said."
* The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
* The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
* To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."

Translating "witness" and "eyewitness":

* The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
* Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
* The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
* To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
* To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something that happens" or to "experience something that happens."

(See also: [ark of the covenant](../kt/arkofthecovenant.md), [guilt](../kt/guilt.md), [judge](../kt/judge.md), [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* Deuteronomy 31:28
* Micah 06:03
* Matthew 26:60
* Mark 01:44
* John 01:07
* John 03:33
* Acts 04:32-33
* Acts 07:44
* Acts 13:31
* Romans 01:09
* 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
* 1 Timothy 05:19-20
* 2 Timothy 01:08
* 2 Peter 01:16-18
* 1 John 05:6-8
* 3 John 01:12
* Revelation 12:11

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H6315, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

eyewitness, eyewitnesses, testified, testifies, testify, testify against, testifying, testimony, witness, witnessed, witnesses

### time

#### Definitions:

In the Bible the term "time" was often used to refer to a specific season or period of time when certain events took place. It has a meaning similar to "age" or "epoch" or "season."

* In both Daniel and Revelation speak of a "time" of great trouble or tribulation that will come upon the earth.
* In the phrase "time, times, and half a time" the term "time" means "year." This phrase refers to a three-and-a-half-year period of time during the great tribulation at the end of this present age.
* "Time" can mean "occasion" in a phrase like "third time." The phrase "many times" can mean "on many occasions."
* To be "on time" means to do something when expected or needed, not late.
* Depending on the context, the term "time" could be translated as, "season" or "time period" or "moment" or "event" or "occurrence."

(See also: [age](../other/age.md), [tribulation](../other/tribulation.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 01:07
* Daniel 12:1-2
* Mark 11:11
* Matthew 08:29
* Psalms 068:28-29
* Revelation 14:15

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H116, H227, H1697, H1755, H2165, H2166, H2233, H2465, H3027, H3117, H3118, H3119, H3259, H3427, H4150, H4279, H4489, H4557, H4592, H5331, H5703, H5732, H5750, H5769, H6235, H6256, H6440, H6471, H6924, H7105, H7138, H7223, H7272, H7637, H7651, H7655, H7659, H7674, H8027, H8032, H8138, H8145, H8160, H8462, H8543, G744, G530, G1074, G1208, G1441, G1597, G1626, G2034, G2119, G2121, G2250, G2540, G3461, G3568, G3764, G3819, G3999, G4181, G4183, G4218, G4287, G4340, G4455, G5151, G5305, G5550, G5551, G5610

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

time, times

### trust

#### Related Ideas:

entrust, trustworthiness, trustworthy

#### Definition:

To "trust" something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called "trust." A "trustworthy" person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of "trustworthiness."

* Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
* Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
* To "trust in" Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
* A "trustworthy saying" refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.
* For one person to "entrust" something to a second person is for the first person to give that thing to the second person and expect that the second person will do what the first person tells him to do.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "trust" could include "believe" or "have faith" or "have confidence" or "depend on."
* The phrase "put your trust in" is very similar in meaning to "trust in."
* The term "trustworthy" could be translated as "dependable" or "reliable" or "can always be trusted."

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [confidence](../other/confidence.md), [faith](../kt/faith.md), [faithful](../kt/faithful.md), [true](../kt/true.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
* 1 Timothy 04:09
* Hosea 10:12-13
* Isaiah 31:1-2
* Nehemiah 13:13
* Psalm 031:05
* Titus 03:8

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H530, H539, H540, H571, H982, H1556, H2620, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3860, G3982, G4100, G4103

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

entrust, entrusted, entrusting, trust, trusted, trusting, trusts, trustworthiness, trustworthy

### turn

#### Related Ideas:

apostasy, apostate

#### Definition:

To "turn" means to physically change direction or to cause something else to change direction.

* The term "turn" can also mean "turn around" to look behind or to face a different direction.
* To "turn back" or "turn away" means to "go back" or "go away" or "cause to go away."
* To "turn away from" something can mean either to stop doing it or to not start doing it.
* To "turn away from" someone means either to refuse to have anything to do with him or to reject him.
* To "turn toward" someone means to look directly at that person.
* To "turn and leave" or "turn his back to leave" means to "go away."
* To "turn back to" means to "start doing something again."
* To "turn away from" means to "stop doing something."
* To "avoid" something is to stay away from it.
* "Apostasy" is the act of turning away from God.
* An "act of apostasy" is an action that someone does to show that he no longer wants to obey God or because he no longer obeys God.
* The term "apostate" describes people who have turned away from God.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "turn" can be translated as "change direction" or "go" or "move."
* In some contexts, "turn" could be translated as "cause" (someone) to do something. To "turn (someone) away from" could be translated as "cause (someone) to go away" or "cause (someone) to stop."
* The phrase "turn away from God" could be translated as "stop worshiping God."
* The phrase "turn back to God" could be translated as "start worshiping God again."
* When enemies "turn back," it means they "retreat." To "turn back the enemy" means to "cause the enemy to retreat."
* Used figuratively, when Israel "turned to" false gods, they "started to worship" them. When they "turned away" from idols, they "stopped worshiping" them.
* When God "turned away from" his rebellious people, he "stopped protecting" or "stopped helping" them.
* The phrase "turn the hearts of the fathers to their children" could be translated as "cause fathers to care for their children again."
* The expression "turn my honor into shame" could be translated as "cause my honor to become shame" or "dishonor me so that I am shamed" or "shame me (by doing what is evil) so that people no longer honor me."
* "I will turn your cities into ruin" could be translated as "I will cause your cities to be destroyed" or "I will cause enemies to destroy your cities."
* The phrase "turn into" could be translated as "become." When Moses' rod "turned into" a snake, it "became" a snake." It could also be translated as "changed into."

(See also: [false god](../kt/falsegod.md), [leprosy](../other/leprosy.md), [worship](../kt/worship.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Kings 11:02
* Acts 07:42
* Acts 11:21
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 01:17
* Malachi 04:06
* Revelation 11:06

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H541, H2015, H2017, H2186, H2559, H3363, H3943, H4672, H4740, H4878, H5186, H5253, H5414, H5437, H5472, H5493, H5528, H5627, H5753, H6437, H7227, H7725, H7734, H7750, H7760, H7847, H8159, H8447, G344, G387, G654, G665, G868, G1294, G1578, G1612, G1624, G1994, G3179, G3313, G3329, G3344, G3346, G4762, G5157, G5290

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

acts of apostasy, apostasy, apostate, turn, turn ... away, turned, turned ... away, turned ... away ... in disgust, turned ... back, turning, turning ... away, turns, turns ... away, turns ... away from

### understand

#### Related Ideas:

argument, craftiness, insight, intelligent, realize, unintentionally, without understanding

#### Definition:

The term "understand" means to hear or receive information and know what it means.

* The term "understanding" can refer to "knowledge" or "wisdom" or realizing how to do something.
* To understand someone can also mean to know how that person is feeling.
* A person who is "without understanding" does not understand.
* While walking on the road to Emmaus, Jesus caused the disciples to understand the meaning of the scriptures about the Messiah.
* Depending on the context, the term "understand" could be translated by "know" or "believe" or "comprehend" or "know what (something) means."
* Often the term "understanding" can be translated by "knowledge" or "wisdom" or "insight."
* "Arguments" are statements that one person makes to share his understanding with another person and to convince that other person to understand something the same way.
* "Craftiness" is understanding used for evil.
* An "intelligent" person thinks clearly and learns quickly.
* To do something "unintentionally" is to do it without knowing or by accident or without intending to do it.

(See also: [believe](../kt/believe.md), [know](../other/know.md), [wise](../kt/wise.md))

#### Bible References:

* Job 34:16-17
* Luke 02:47
* Luke 08:10
* Matthew 13:12
* Matthew 13:14
* Proverbs 03:05

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H995, H998, H999, H1847, H2940, H3045, H3820, H3823, H3824, H4486, H7200, H7919, H7922, H7924, H8085, H8394, G50, G144, G145, G191, G801, G1097, G1108, G1271, G1380, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G1990, G2638, G2657, G3539, G3563, G4894, G4907, G4908, G4920, G5424, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

arguments, craftiness, gain understanding, gives ... insight, insight, intelligent, realize, realized, understand, understanding, understands, understood, unintentionally, without understanding

### well

#### Related Ideas:

cistern

#### Definition:

The terms "well" and "cistern" refer to two different kinds of sources for water in Bible times.

* A well is a deep hole dug into the ground so that underground water can flow into it.
* A cistern is a deep hole dug into rock that was used as a holding tank for collecting rain water.
* Cisterns were usually dug into rock and sealed with plaster to keep the water in. A "broken cistern" happened when the plaster became cracked so that the water leaked out.
* Cisterns were often located in the courtyard area of people's homes to catch the rainwater that would run off the roof.
* Wells were often located where they could be accessed by several families or a whole community.
* Because water was very important for both people and livestock, the right to use a well was often a cause of strife and conflict.
* Both wells and cisterns were usually covered with a large stone to prevent anything falling in it. Often there was a rope with a bucket or pot attached to it to bring the water up to the surface.
* Sometimes a dry cistern was used as a place to imprison someone, such as happened to Joseph and Jeremiah.
* These terms are similar in meaning. The main difference is that a well continually receives water from underground springs, whereas a cistern is a holding tank for water that usually comes from rain.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Ways to translate "well" could include "deep water hole" or "deep hole for spring water" or "deep hole for drawing water."
* The term "cistern" could be translated as "stone water pit" or "deep and narrow pit for water" or "underground tank for holding water."

(See also: [Jeremiah](../names/jeremiah.md), [prison](../other/prison.md), [strife](../other/strife.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 Chronicles 11:17
* 2 Samuel 17:17-18
* Genesis 16:14
* Luke 14:4-6
* Numbers 20:17

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H875, H953, H1360, H4002, H4599, H4726, H4841, G4077, G5421

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

cistern, cisterns, well, wells

### will of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's will, desire of God, he wishes, his will, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord

#### Definition:

The "will of God" refers to God's desires and plans.

* God's will especially relates to his interactions with people and how he wants people to respond to him.
* It also refers to his plans or desires for the rest of his creation.
* The term to "will" means to "determine" or to "desire."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* The "will of God" could also be translated as "what God desires" or "what God has planned" or "God's purpose" or "what is pleasing to God."

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15-17
* 1 Thessalonians 04:3-6
* Colossians 04:12-14
* Ephesians 01:1-2
* John 05:30-32
* Mark 03:33-35
* Matthew 06:8-10
* Psalms 103:21

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H6634, H7522, G1012, G1013, G2307, G2308, G2309

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's will, desires of God, he desires, he wishes, his will, will of God, will of my Father, will of our God and Father, will of the Lord, will of your Father, you are willing, your will

### wise

#### Related Ideas:

wisdom, wisely, wiser, wisest

#### Definition:

The term "wise" describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. "Wisdom" is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

* Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
* People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
* A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.
* "Sound wisdom" is wisdom that enables people who have it to succeed in doing good.
* In the Bible, the phrase "worldly wisdom" refers to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, other ways to translate "wise" could include "obedient to God" or "sensible and obedient" or "God-fearing."
* "Wisdom" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "wise living" or "sensible and obedient living" or "good judgment."
* It is best to translate "wise" and "wisdom" in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: [obey](../other/obey.md), [fruit](../other/fruit.md))

#### Bible References:

* Acts 06:03
* Colossians 03:15-17
* Exodus 31:06
* Genesis 03:06
* Isaiah 19:12
* Jeremiah 18:18
* Matthew 07:24

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H998, H1350, H1847, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3925 H6195, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

sound wisdom, wisdom, wise, wisely, wiser, wisest

### word

#### Definition:

A "word" refers to something that someone has said. In the Bible, it almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.

* An example of this is when the angel told Zechariah, "You did not believe my words," which means, "You did not believe what I said."
* Sometimes "word" refers to speech in general, such as "powerful in word and deed" which means "powerful in speech and behavior."
* Often in the Bible "the word" refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in "the word of God" or "the word of truth."
* A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called "the Word." For these last two meanings, see [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md)

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Different ways of translating "word" or "words" include "teaching" or "message" or "news" or "a saying" or "what was said."

(See also: [word of God](../kt/wordofgod.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Timothy 04:02
* Acts 08:04
* Colossians 04:03
* James 01:18
* Jeremiah 27:04
* John 01:03
* John 01:14
* Luke 08:15
* Matthew 02:08
* Matthew 07:27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H2656, H2706, H4405, H4406, H7878, H8052, G518, G1024, G1310, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G5023, G5537, G5542

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

word, words, message, messages

### word of God

#### Related Ideas:

God's word, his words, my word, scripture, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, writings

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the term "word of God" refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called "the Word of God."

* The term "scriptures" means "writings." It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God's message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
* The related terms "word of Yahweh" and "word of the Lord" often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
* Sometimes this term occurs as simply "the word" or "my word" or "your word" (when talking about God's word).
* In the New Testament, Jesus is called "the Word" and "the Word of God." These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

The term "word of truth" is another way of referring to "God's word," which is his message or teaching. It does not refer to just one word.

* God's word of truth includes everything that God has taught people about himself, his creation, and his plan of salvation through Jesus.
* This term emphasizes the fact that what God has told us is true, faithful, and real.

#### Translation Suggestions:

Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "the message of Yahweh" or "God's message" or "the teachings from God."

It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say "God's words" or "the words of Yahweh."

The expression "the word of Yahweh came" is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as "Yahweh spoke this message" or "Yahweh spoke these words."

The term "scripture" or "scriptures" could be translated as "the writings" or "the written message from God." This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term "word."

When "word" occurs alone and it refers to God's word, it could be translated as "the message" or "God's word" or "the teachings." Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.

When the Bible refers to Jesus as "the Word," this term could be translated as "the Message" or "the Truth."

"Word of truth" could be translated as "God's true message" or "God's word, which is true."

It is important for the translation of this term to include the meaning of being true.

(See also: [prophet](../kt/prophet.md), [true](../kt/true.md), [word](../other/word.md), [Yahweh](../kt/yahweh.md))

#### Bible References:

* Genesis 15:01
* 1 Kings 13:01
* Jeremiah 36:1-3
* Luke 08:11
* John 05:39
* Acts 06:02
* Acts 12:24
* Romans 01:02
* 2 Corinthians 06:07
* Ephesians 01:13
* 2 Timothy 03:16
* James 01:18
* James 02:8-9

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

God's word, God's words, his words, my word, scripture, scriptures, word of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, word of truth, words of God, writings

### work

#### Related Ideas:

act, deed, fellow worker

#### Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "work," "deed," and "act" are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

* God's "works" and the "work of his hands" are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms "deeds" and "acts" are also used to refer to God's miracles in expressions such as "mighty acts" or "marvelous deeds."
* The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called "good fruit."
* The term "work" can also refer to "service" or "ministry."
* People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
* The term "fellow worker" means someone who does a ministry along with someone else.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Other ways to translate "works" or "deeds" could be "actions" or "things that are done."
* When referring to God's "works" or "deeds" and the "work of his hands," these expressions could also be translated as "miracles" or "mighty acts" or "amazing things he does."
* The expression "the work of God" could be translated as "the things that God is doing" or "the miracles God does" or "the amazing things that God does" or "everything God has accomplished."
* The expression "your work in the Lord" could also be translated as "what you do for the Lord."
* The expression "examine your own work" could also be translated as "make sure what you are doing is God's will" or "make sure that what you are doing pleases God."
* The expression "the work of the Holy Spirit" could be translated as "the empowering of the Holy Spirit" or "the ministry of the Holy Spirit" or "the things that the Holy Spirit does."

(See also: [fruit](../other/fruit.md), [Holy Spirit](../kt/holyspirit.md), [miracle](../kt/miracle.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 03:12
* Acts 02:8-11
* Daniel 04:37
* Exodus 34:10-11
* Galatians 02:15-16
* James 02:17
* Matthew 16:27-28
* Micah 02:07
* Romans 03:28
* Titus 03:4-5

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H1576, H4399, H4566, H4567, H4611, H4639, H4659, H5673, H5949, H5998, H6213, H6466, H6468, G1754, G2038, G2040, G2041, G2716, G3173

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

act, action, actions, activities, acts, deed, deeds, fellow worker, fellow workers, work, works

### world

#### Related Ideas:

universe, worldly

#### Definition:

The term "world" usually refers to the part of the universe where people live: the earth. The term "worldly" describes the evil values and behaviors of people living in this world.

* In its most general sense, the term "world" refers to the heavens and the earth, as well as everything in them.
* In many contexts, "world" actually means "people in the world."
* Sometimes it is implied that this refers to the evil people on earth or the people who do not obey God.
* The apostles also used "world" to refer to the selfish behaviors and corrupt values of the people living in this world. This can include self-righteous religious practices which are based on human efforts.
* People and things characterized by these values are said to be "worldly."

#### Translation Suggestions:

* Depending on the context, "world" could also be translated as "universe" or "people of this world" or "corrupt things in the world" or "evil attitudes of people in the world."
* The phrase "all the world" often means "many people" and refers to the people living in a certain region. For example, "all the world came to Egypt" could be translated as "many people from the surrounding countries came to Egypt" or "people from all the countries surrounding Egypt came there."
* Another way to translate "all the world went to their hometown to be registered in the Roman census" would be "many of the people living in regions ruled by the Roman empire went..."
* Depending on the context, the term "worldly" could be translated as, "evil" or "sinful" or "selfish" or "ungodly" or "corrupt" or "influenced by the corrupt values of people in this world."
* The phrase "saying these things in the world" can be translated as "saying these things to the people of the world."
* In other contexts, "in the world" could also be translated as "living among the people of the world" or "living among ungodly people."

(See also: [corrupt](../other/corrupt.md), [heaven](../kt/heaven.md), [Rome](../names/rome.md), [godly](../kt/godly.md))

#### Bible References:

* 1 John 02:15
* 1 John 04:05
* 1 John 05:05
* John 01:29
* Matthew 13:36-39

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H776, H2309, H2465, H2717, H5769, H8398, G165, G1093, G2886, G2889, G3625

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

universe, world, world's, worldly

### worthy

#### Related Ideas:

deserve, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy

#### Definition:

The term "worthy" describes someone or something that deserves respect or honor. To "have worth" means to be valuable or important.

* Being "worthy" is related to being valuable or having importance.
* To do something "worthily" means to do something in a worthy way.
* To be "unworthy" means to not be deserving of any honor or recognition.
* To be "worthless" means to not have any purpose or value.
* To "nullify" something is to make it worth nothing.

#### Translation Suggestions:

* "Worthy" could be translated as "deserving" or "important" or "valuable."
* The word "worth" could be translated as "value" or "importance."
* The phrase to "have worth" could also be translated as to "be valuable" or to "be important."
* The phrase "is worth more than" could be translated as "is more valuable than."
* Depending on the context, the term, "unworthy" could also be translated as "unimportant" or "dishonorable" or "undeserving."
* The term "worthless" could be translated as "with no value" or "with no purpose" or "worth nothing."

(See also: [honor](../kt/honor.md))

#### Bible References:

* 2 Samuel 22:04
* 2 Thessalonians 01:11-12
* Acts 13:25
* Acts 25:25-27
* Acts 26:31
* Colossians 01:9-10
* Jeremiah 08:19
* Mark 01:07
* Matthew 03:10-12
* Philippians 01:25-27

#### Word Data:

* Strong's: H457, H1100, H2428, H3276, H3644, H4242, H4373, H4392, H4592, H4941, H5541, H6994, H7385, H7386, H7723, H7939, H8602, G96, G514, G515, G516, G888, G1777, G2425, G2480, G2661, G3152, G4186, G5092

#### Forms Found in the English ULB:

deserve, deserved, deserves, deserving, nullify, unworthy, worth, worthily, worthless, worthlessness, worthy